United States Environmental Protection Agency
Office of Water 4304
EPA 822-D-99-001
April 1999

NUTRIENT CRITERIA TECHNICAL GUIDANCE MANUAL:

LAKES AND RESERVOIRS

DRAFT

For peer review only; not for citation or distribution

The Nutrient Criteria Technical Guidance Manual for Lakes and Reservoirs is the first in a series of waterbody-specific documents which will be developed by EPA in support of the President's Clean Water Action Plan and the National Strategy for the Development of Regional Nutrient Criteria. A major element of both of these 1998 initiatives is the development of waterbody-specific technical guidance documents that can be used to assess the potential nutrient impairment of a waterbody and develop regional-specific nutrient criteria. These documents provide background information on classifying waterbodies, selecting variables that can potentially be used as criteria, and describing methods for developing appropriate values for these criteria.

This document is presented to the public for information purposes only. The document is presently undergoing scientific peer review which will be completed in September 1999. If you would like to send questions or comments to EPA regarding this document, please direct your correspondence to: OW-general@epamail.epa.gov.

The final draft of the Lakes and Reservoirs nutrient guidance document will be published and placed on this website in Fall of 1999.

Executive Summary

Over-enrichment of American surface waters has been a long standing problem to the extent that approximately half of the waters reported by the States to be impaired are attributed to excess nutrients. The EPA National Regional Nutrient Criteria Development Program has been established to address this water quality problem. The surface waters of concern are lakes and reservoirs, streams and rivers, estuaries and coastal marine waters, and wetlands. Criteria representing enrichment conditions of surface waters which are minimally impacted by human developmental activities will be developed for each of the regions of the country. These will then become the basis for States and Tribes of the U.S. to develop nutrient criteria to protect the designated uses of those waters. This manual is designed to help accomplish this for lakes and reservoirs.

Nitrogen and phosphorus are the primary concerns of over enrichment and are obvious nutrient criteria variables, but biological response variables are also deemed necessary to address the consequences of over enrichment.

Limnology and lake management has developed a general rule-of-thumb about eutrophication in response to Vollenweider's (1968) advances and the many experiences since then in temperate climes and freshwater lakes; an ambient total phosphorus (TP) concentration of greater than about 0.15mg/L and or a total nitrogen (TN) of about 1.5 mg/L is likely to predict Blue-Green algal bloom problems during the growing season. Similarly, chronic over enrichment leads to lake quality degradation manifested in: low dissolved oxygen, fish kills, algal blooms, expanded macrophytes, likely increased sedimentation rates, and species shifts of both flora and fauna.

However, because some parts of the country have naturally higher soil and parent material enrichment, and different precipitation regimes, the application of that rule-of-thumb approach has to be adjusted by region. Therefore, an ecoregional and reference condition approach is necessary to develop nutrient criteria appropriate to each of the different geographical and climatological areas of the country. Initially the continental U.S. has been divided into 14 separate ecoregions of similar geographical characteristics, and criteria will be developed for each.

While additional variables may be used for the nutrient criteria, The initial effort will concentrate on TP, TN, and chlorophyll plus Secchi depth or similar measure of algal turbidity to reflect the primary production response to over enrichment. Thus, the criteria involve four basic indicators of over enrichment. Other indicators are also deemed useful such as D.O. and macrophyte growth or speciation, and other flora and fauna changes, but the first four are paramount, especially the two limiting nutrients. Nitrogen may not be critical to many fresh water lakes, but it does become significant in estuaries and coastal waters downstream. Because one requirement of nutrient criteria development is to pay attention to downstream effects, N reduction for lakes benefits the lower reaches of the overall system. Regardless, throughout the country excessive eutrophication or over enrichment is caused by either too much N or P or some combination of the two in their various forms.

Therefore, TN and TP are described as causal variables, and chlorophyll and algal turbidity are initial response variables. Measuring just the response variables clearly shows the existence of a problem, but waters with a short retention time could look clear and be aesthetically acceptable, and could still be sending an unacceptable load of N and P downstream to be someone else's problem. This is why the stipulation for downstream consideration is included in the criterion definition. A nutrient criterion consists of five elements:

1. Historical data and other information to provide an overall perspective on the status of the resource.
2. Present reference sites and a collective reference condition describing the current status.

3. Possible modeling to refine data implications above if necessary .
4. Objective assessment of all of the above information by the States and by the EPA Regional Technical Assistance Groups (RTAG's), a board of State and Federal specialists established in each EPA Region to help develop and administer the Nutrient Criteria Program, to establish the regional criteria, and to review proposed State or Tribal nutrient criteria.
5. Attention to downstream consequences before the criterion is finally established.

Using this approach regional benchmark criteria can be established which States and Tribes can use to help them set their own criteria to protect all their designated uses. The States are allowed flexibility in their approaches so long as their initiatives are scientifically defensible, and a threshold for positive action is imposed through the ecoregional criteria which EPA can promulgate if no State or Tribal action is taken. A key responsibility of the RTAG's, with their best knowledge of regional water quality and management potential, is the development of these ecoregional criteria and review of subsequent State and Tribal criteria. A summary of the approach for ecoregional criteria setting is as follows:

The RTAG's collect as much existing reference quality data for at least the four principle variables as possible from STORET, States and Tribes, Universities, local governments, and other Federal agencies. Data collection is directed to the particular waterbody type of interest and to established physical classes of those waters, e.g. small, medium, and large lakes. Because the States are all represented on the RTAG, they are fully involved in the process.

The data is reviewed for quality and utility and then the distribution of data points throughout the ecoregion for each class is assessed and additional data gathered if needed.

When satisfied with the adequacy of the data distribution for the classes, the reference sites are compared. If there are obvious shifts in reference values (e.g. through cluster analysis) the ecoregion is subdivided accordingly or perhaps boundaries are shifted. The same assessment should be made for temporal distribution to determine if seasonal criteria are needed. Both of these divisions should help reduce variability in the reference condition as well, albeit with the risk of reducing the population of applicable observations.

In the process, the RTAG's are expected to coordinate with their adjacent counterparts to promote consistent subregional boundaries and criteria. The EPA Headquarters nutrient criteria group will play a mediating and coordinating role in this process, but the initial determinations will be made by the RTAG's.

The established reference conditions will then be incorporated with the other elements of a criterion - historical perspective, possible modeling of data, and concern to protect downstream waters - by the RTAG to set that particular ecoregional criterion for TP, TN, chlorophyll-a, and Secchi depth or similar measure of organic based turbidity.

These ecoregional values, or in some cases ranges of values, will be used by EPA if it becomes necessary to promulgate a criterion in the absence of appropriate State or Tribal action. EPA expects the States and Tribes of the Continental U.S. to develop nutrient criteria for each class of surface water bodies within three years of the establishment of the ecoregional criteria for those waters. Hawaii, Alaska, and U. S. Trust Territories will develop separate ecoregions in conjunction with their RTAG's and the National Regional Nutrient Criteria Program.

This manual concludes with chapters describing data models, and management options available to the States and Tribes to actively protect or restore their lake resources. Case histories illustrating nutrient criteria development and management efforts are also appended with the names of individual specialists to contact for more information.

Contents

CHAPTER I

Introduction

A. Purpose of this Document

Nutrient over-enrichment is a major source of water pollution in the United States. According to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA's) 1996 report to Congress (USEPA, 1996a) of the waterbodies sampled and reported to be impaired, 40 percent of the rivers, 51 percent of the lakes, and 57 percent of the estuaries were impaired by bacteria and nutrients. A major element of EPA's National Strategy for the Development of Regional Nutrient Criteria (USEPA, 1998), also referred to as the National Nutrient Strategy, is the development of waterbody-specific technical guidance documents that can be used to assess potential trophic state impairment and to develop regional-specific nutrient criteria. The purpose of this document is to provide this guidance for lakes and reservoirs. A similar document is being prepared for rivers and streams and future documents will be prepared for estuaries/coastal areas and wetlands.

Because of diverse geographic and climate conditions, single national nutrient criteria for lakes and reservoirs are not appropriate. Instead, nutrient criteria must be developed at the state, regional, or individual waterbody levels. This document, therefore, does not attempt to set national criteria, but provides State and Tribal water quality managers with guidance on how they can set criteria themselves. The document provides background information on classifying waterbodies, selecting variables that can potentially be used as criteria, and describes methods for developing appropriate values for these criteria. The document also provides information on sampling, data processing, and appropriate management techniques.

Nutrient over-enrichment consistently ranks as one of the top causes of water resource impairment, and this initiative is designed to address that particular water quality problem. It is important to recognize just what is meant by nutrient over-enrichment. In the context of this guidance manual, over-enrichment means the addition of nutrients that causes adverse effects or impairment to designated use(s) or to the ecosystem. Symptoms of such impairment include but are not limited to frequent nuisance algal blooms, fish kills, overabundance or decline of macrophytes, and loss of top predators from the food chain.

It is also important to recognize that management for nutrient control is the reduction of the human caused fraction of the nitrogen, phosphorus, or related nutrients entering the waters. This is often referred to as cultural eutrophication to distinguish this enrichment from the inherent nutrient load entering the waterbody from soils and parent material indigenous to the area in the absence of disruptive erosion. Cultural eutrophication results from such human endeavors as construction activities, sewage discharges, agricultural practices, and residential development. This guidance is intended to help the user develop criteria useful to the abatement of this cultural eutrophication.

B. Relationship Between Water Quality Standards and Criteria

States and authorized Tribes are responsible for developing water quality standards to protect the physical, biological, and chemical integrity of their waters. A water quality standard defines the quality goals for a water body by designating specific uses of a water body, setting criteria to protect those uses, and establishing an antidegradation policy to protect existing water quality. The uses of a water body include "existing uses" that were attained on or after November 28, 1975 (the date of the promulgation by USEPA of the first water quality standards regulations) and "designated uses," which are desired uses that may or may not already be attained. At a minimum, a water body's uses must include recreation in and on the water and propagation of fish and wildlife unless the state performs, and EPA approves, a use attainability analysis justifying a different designated use. Other specific use categories such as boating, trout propagation, or potable water supply also may be adopted. [1]

After designating the uses of a water body, the state must adopt numeric and/or narrative criteria to protect and support the specified uses (33 USC § 1313 (c) (2)). Such criteria must be based on a sound scientific rationale and must contain sufficient parameters to protect the designated use(s). Narrative criteria describe the desired water quality conditions in a qualitative context. They are "benchmarks" for water quality assessments. An example is shown below:

> *"All waters shall meet generally accepted aesthetic qualifications, shall be capable of supporting desirable aquatic life, and shall be free from substances, conditions, or combinations thereof attributable to human activities that produce objectionable color, odor, or taste, or induce the growth of undesirable aquatic life."*

Numeric criteria, on the other hand, attempt to quantify this benchmark by supporting and refining the narrative criteria. Numeric criteria are values assigned to measurable components in the water body. An example of a numeric criteria might be that a lake's average total phosphorus concentration should "not exceed 20 µg/L during the summer growing season." In addition to narrative and numeric criteria, some States might have "quantitative" criteria; such criteria are an intermediate form of criteria. The numerical values are not written into State laws but are instead used internally by natural resource agencies to determine compliance with the narrative criteria. Numeric and quantitative criteria are superior to narrative criteria in several ways. They form the basis for consistent measurement of environmental quality, they provide distinct interpretations of acceptable and unacceptable conditions that can be debated by concerned parties, and they reduce ambiguity for management and enforcement decisions.

This document deals specifically with the establishment of nutrient criteria for lakes and reservoirs (under the authority of the Clean Water Act (CWA) Section 304) as a means of addressing nutrient over-enrichment problems. For these types of criteria to be effective, however, they should be accompanied by responsive nutrient management approaches.

A responsible nutrient management plan should meet three practical conditions. First, the plan and its component elements must be scientifically defensible otherwise it might lead to

---

[1] The EPA water quality standards regulations are at 40 CFR Part 131 and guidance on their implementation is in the EPA water quality standards handbook (EPA-823-B-94-005a).

well-intentioned management actions that are unnecessary or harmful. This is like the admonition to physicians— “above all do no harm.” Secondly, effective nutrient management must also be economically feasible. The public, and especially local affected interests, have a right to expect approaches that are economically feasible and provide meaningful benefit compared to their cost. Very few expensive projects are likely to be successful because of the resistance that they will encounter. Finally, these approaches must also be practical and acceptable to the communities that are involved. They should address appropriate social and political issues, such as “turf” conflicts that might exist between public agencies and landowners or between watershed residents and lake users. The point is that any management plan may fail if these three general elements are not sufficiently addressed, and it is almost certain to fail if they are ignored.

C. Uses of Nutrient Criteria

- *Identification of problems*

EPA expects that the process of collecting current data and surveying perhaps more lakes or reservoirs than were investigated before will produce new information revealing conditions not recognized before. By comparing the water quality criteria for nutrients to actual water quality, the resource management decision-makers may well recognize over-enriched lakes or reservoirs or portions of these water bodies for the first time. These new problems can be incorporated into the information system so that remediation can be initiated.

- *Management Planning*

The nutrient criteria development process not only establishes these benchmarks identifying over-enrichment, it also makes it possible to rank the relative magnitude of the problems with respect to each other. A scale of over-enrichment with a frequency distribution can be created which readily identifies the scope of the enrichment problems to be addressed and the numbers of lakes or impoundments in each state of degradation. Modeling plays a significant role here either to supplement existing data sets or to assess the projected effect of various options and combinations of management approaches.

Thus a form of triage can be practiced to assign scarce manpower and funds in an efficient way. For example, a state may choose to create a balance of many high quality lakes to be protected, several moderately degraded ones to be restored by cost effective land use changes implemented early, and one or a few badly over-enriched systems of particular concern to the people which should be started upon, but for which only a long term, protracted project and budget will suffice.

- *Regulatory Assessments*

Much of the management work done by EPA and the States is regulatory and the nutrient criteria, once established, shall be incorporated into state standards to become the basis of enforceable tools. These values are used to develop limits in *National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES)* permits for point source discharges. The permit limits for nitrogen, phosphorus and other trace nutrients emitted from wastewater treatment plants, factories, food processors and other dischargers can be appropriately adjusted and enforced in accordance with the criteria.

Similarly, *Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL)* estimates used to allocate remediation responsibilities, especially with respect to nonpoint sources on a watershed basis, can be established with respect to these nutrient criteria. Knowing the optimum nutrient load for a lake (and its downstream recipient waters), makes it possible to divide and allocate that load among the tributary subwatersheds of the system. Resource managers can then begin land use improvements and other activities necessary to improving the system in a methodical way and on a reasonable scale so that restoration can be achieved.

The criteria portion of water quality standards may also be used in antidegradation reviews and can serve in the development of Best Management Practices (BMPs) for State and local nonpoint source programs.

- *Project Evaluations*

The nutrient criteria can be further applied to evaluate the relative success of management activities such as described immediately above. "Before, during and after" measurements of nutrient enrichment variables in the receiving waters, when compared to the criteria, provide an objective and direct assessment of the success of the management project.

- *Status and Trends of Water Resources*

Throughout the continuing process of problem identification, response and remediation, and evaluation to protect and enhance our water resources, States and the Agency are required by 305(b) of the CWA to periodically report to the U.S. Congress on the status of the nation's waters. The nutrient criteria would expand and refine that report by adding an additional set of both causal and response parameters to the measurement process. The States and EPA will be able to compare the measured enrichment conditions of their lakes and reservoirs and document the changes that have resulted and the relative progress made.

The rest of this guidance manual will present detailed information elaborating upon this brief outline of this important material. Our intent is to present essentially a two part guidance document, the first half of which will be a presentation of the science and technology associated with the measurements required and processes associated with the development of the "benchmark" nutrient criteria needed to make enrichment identifications. The second portion will address the equally important process of making management decisions to protect and enhance the trophic state of our nation's waters and to evaluate the relative success of that management so we may know what works and what doesn't so the next round of criteria development and management will be conducted from a truly expanded base of knowledge.

D. Overview of the Nutrient Criteria Development Process

1. The Strategy for Reducing Cultural Eutrophication

There are five key elements associated with the strategy for reducing cultural eutrophication (USEPA, 1998):

- EPA believes that nutrient criteria need to be established on a regional basis and need to be appropriate to each water body type. They should not be established as a single set of national numbers or values. There is simply too much natural variation from one part of the country to another. Similarly, the expression of nutrient enrichment and its measurement by necessity varies from one waterbody type to another. Streams do not respond to phosphorus and nitrogen the same way as lakes or coastal waters.

- Consequently, EPA has prepared guidance for these criteria on a waterbody type and region specific basis. With detailed manuals available for data gathering, criteria development, and management response, States and Tribes should then be able to conduct surveys and develop criteria to help them deal with the problem of the over enrichment of their waters.
- To help achieve this, the Agency has initiated a system of EPA Regional technical and financial support operations each lead by a Nutrient Coordinator - a specialist responsible for providing the help and guidance necessary for States or Tribes in his or her region to accomplish the necessary environmental investigations and remediations. These Regional Coordinators are guided and assisted in their duties by a team of inter and intra-agency specialists from EPA Headquarters. This team is responsible for providing both technical and financial support to the Regional Technical Assistance Groups (RTAGS) created by these Coordinators so the job can be completed, and communication can be established and maintained between the policy making function in Headquarters and the actual environmental management in the Regions.
- Development of basic ecoregional nutrient criteria values for waterbody types. The regional teams and States/Tribes can use this as guidance for developing criteria protective of designated uses or which the Agency may use if it elects to promulgate criteria for a State or Tribe if necessary. These criteria will have value in two contexts: (a) as the basis of water quality standards, NPDES permit limits, and as TMDL target values; and (b) as decision making benchmarks for management planning and assessment.
- Monitoring and evaluation of the effectiveness of nutrient management programs implemented on the basis of the nutrient criteria. EPA intends the criteria guidance to reflect the “natural”, minimally impaired trophic condition of a given regional class of waterbody. Once water quality standards are established for nutrients based on these criteria, the relative success or failure of any management effort, either protection or remediation, can be evaluated.

Thus, the five elements of the National Nutrient Strategy describe a process which extends from measurements of the collective water resources of an area, to establishing nutrient criteria or “benchmarks” that, when part of water quality standards, can be used for evaluating the discrete waters within that region or area, to assessing individual waterbodies against these standards, to designing and conducting the appropriate management and, finally evaluating its relative success.

2. Nutrient Criteria Development Process

Provided below is a discussion of the activities that generally comprise the nutrient criteria development process. They are listed in the order generally followed and the subsequent chapters of this document follow this sequence.

(a) Preliminary Steps for Criteria Development *(Chapter 3)*

- *Establishment of Regional Technical Assistance Groups*

The Regional Nutrient Coordinator in each EPA Region will contact and obtain the involvement of key specialists (e.g. limnologists, water resource managers, oceanographers, stream and wetland ecologists, water chemists, and land use specialists) in that Region with respect to the water bodies of concern, and these experts should be recruited from other federal agencies, state agencies, universities and colleges. Particular federal agencies of interest are: the US Geological Survey (USGS), the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS), National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), the US Forest Service (USFS), and the US Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). In certain areas of the country, the US Army Corps of Engineers (USACOE) or the Bureau of Land Management (BLM) or special government agencies such as the Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA) may be pertinent. Similarly, for information and education activities, especially with respect to agriculture, the USDA Cooperative Extension Service is a valuable resource. State agencies with responsibilities relevant to this effort are variously named, but are commonly referred to as: Department of Natural Resources, Department of Water Resources, Department of the Environment, Department of Environmental Management, Fisheries and Wildlife Management, State Department of Agriculture, State Department of Forestry, and other land use management agencies. Most state land grant universities have faculty talent important to nutrient management and almost all colleges and universities have applied science faculty with research interests and talents appropriate to this initiative. In selecting participants for the group diverse expertise is an obvious prerequisite, but willingness to cooperate in the group effort, integrity, and a lack of a strong alternative interest are also important factors to consider in selecting these essential people who must make collective and sometimes difficult determinations.

The experts chosen will constitute the Regional Technical Assistance Group (RTAG), The Technical Assistance Group will be responsible for major decisions in the regional implementation of the program. And the group should be sufficiently large to have the necessary breadth of experience, but small enough to effectively debate and resolve serious scientific and management issues. A membership of about thirty approaches an unwieldy size although that number may initially be necessary to maintain an effective working group of half that size.

Special interest groups may be expected to seek membership in the Technical Assistance Group and the nutrient coordinator must weigh their participation carefully. Contributions from these groups and their perspectives are essential. In all cases, determinations must be made on the expertise the individual brings to the group. At a minimum RTAGs are encouraged to hold regular “stakeholders” meetings so that environmental, industrial, and other interests may participate via a separate public forum associated with and responding to the Group’s efforts. It is important that citizens and public groups be involved, and any significant determinations of the Group should include a public session at which a current account of activities and determinations is presented and comments acknowledged and considered. In addition, where specific land uses or practices are addressed, those property owners, farmers, fishermen, or other involved parties should be consulted in the deliberation and decision making process.

It is reasonable to expect monthly or at least quarterly meetings of the Technical Assistance Group with working assignments and assessments conducted between these meetings. To coordinate activities among the ten Regional Technical Assistance Groups and with the

National Nutrients Team, regular conference calls have been established. At these sessions, new developments in the Program, technical innovations and experiences, budgets and policy evolutions will be conveyed and discussed. In the same context, an annual meeting of all nutrient coordinators, State representatives, and involved Federal agencies is also held each Spring in or near Washington, D.C. At this meeting major technical reports are presented by specialists and issues significant to the Program are discussed.

The composition and coordination discussed above is intended to establish the shortest possible line of communication between the State, Region, and National Program staff members so that a rapid but reasoned response is promoted to changing issues and techniques affecting the nutrient management of our waters. It is also designed to be responsive to the water resource user community without becoming a part of user conflicts.

- *Delineation of Nutrient Ecoregions Appropriate to the Development of Criteria*

The initial step in this process has been taken through the creation of a national nutrient ecoregion map consisting of fourteen North American subdivisions of the coterminous United States (**Figure 1.1**). These are aggregations of Level III ecoregions revised by Omernik (1998). Alaska, Hawaii and the U.S. Territories will be subdivided into nutrient ecoregions later; with the advice and assistance of those States and governments.

The initial responsibility of each Regional Technical Assistance Group will be to evaluate the present ecoregional map with respect to variability based on detailed observations and data available from the States and Tribes in that EPA Region. This preliminary assessment of the nutrient ecoregional boundaries will be further dependent upon the additional nutrient water quality data obtained by those States. The databases, especially with respect to selected reference sites, will be used to refine the initial boundaries of the map in each EPA Region.

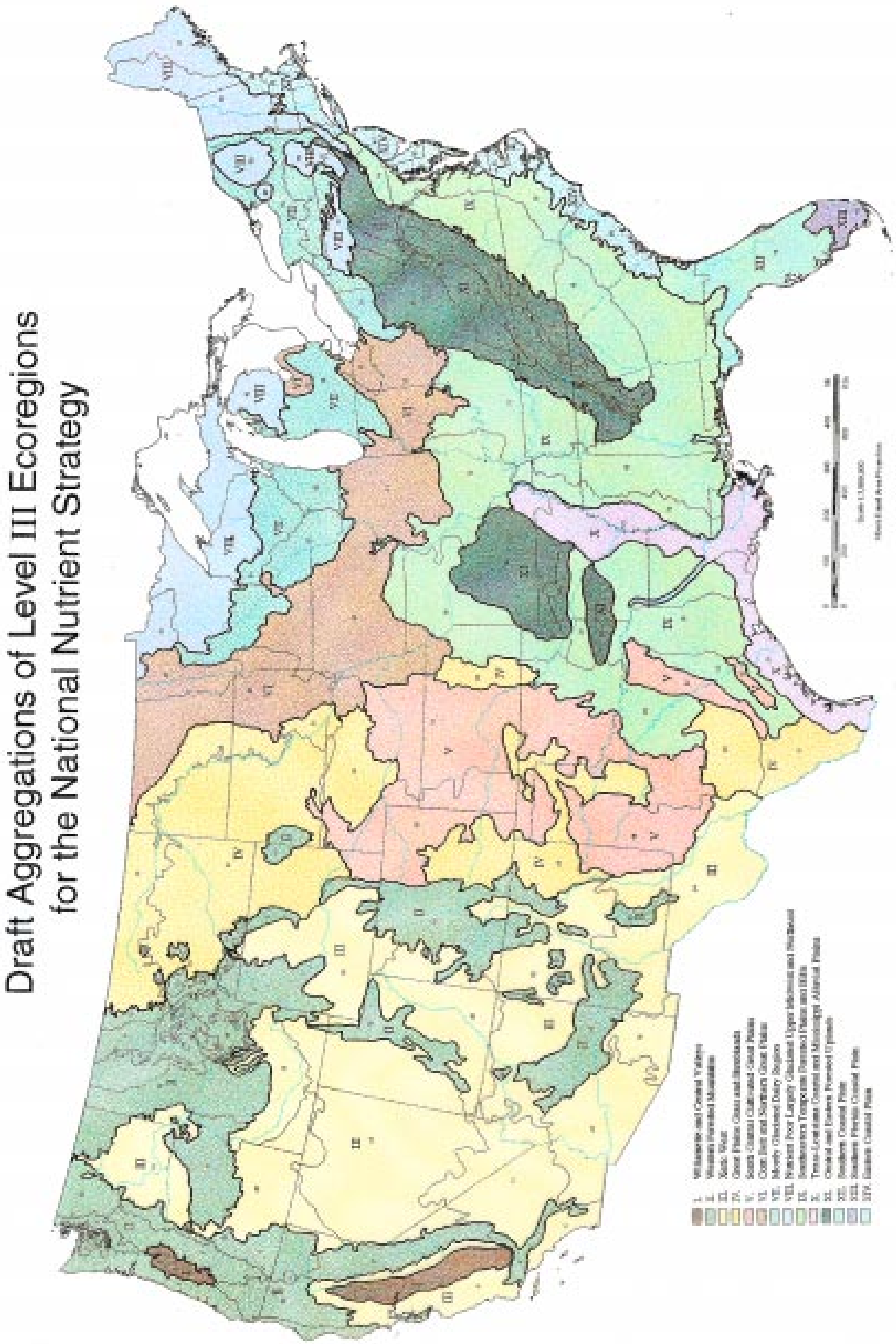
It is expected that the collective effect of these evaluations by all ten EPA Regional TAGs will result in the further refinement and subdivision of many of the fourteen ecoregions, especially the large, multi-state ones. The boundaries will shift or be subdivided in accordance with the trophic conditions and nutrient indicators of similar water bodies in each locality.

- *Physical Classification*

The next step in the evaluation of the data is to devise a classification scheme for rationally subdividing the population of lakes in the State. Since identification of over-enrichment is the objective of nutrient criteria development, trophic classification *per se* should be avoided as should any classification based on levels of human development.

Physical characteristics independent of most cultural enrichment sources are far more appropriate. Such classification is usually done initially on a size basis, e.g. acres of surface area or square miles of watersheds. A volumetric variable which may be used for further subclassification is mean or maximum depth. Similarly, inherent water quality characteristics such as marl or bog lakes may also apply. In fact such lakes, especially if few in number, are usually separated out of the general population and identified as a separate and unique class. Hydroelectric reservoirs and effluent dominated systems are two such examples.

Once lakes have been classified, it is important to determine how much information is available describing the enrichment status of these lakes. State agency records are the basis for an initial data search. In many states, water quality information resides in more than one agency. For example, Maryland has a Department of Natural Resources and a Department of


Draft Aggregations of Level III Ecoregions
for the National Nutrient Strategy

the Environment, both of which retain water quality records. To compound the search further, States may also have pertinent data sets in their Departments of Fisheries and Public Health. It is wise to initiate the search for information with calls and questionnaires to colleagues in the State or Tribal agencies likely to be involved so an appropriate list of contacts and data sets can be compiled. In doing so, regional Federal agencies should not be overlooked either. These include the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Park Service, and the U.S. (and State) Geological Surveys.

(b) Establishing an Appropriate Data Base *(Chapter 4)*

- *Review of Historical Information*

Historical information is important to establish a perspective on the condition of a given waterbody. Has its condition changed radically in recent years? Is the system stable over time? Has there been a trend up or down in trophic condition? Only an assessment of the historical record can provide these answers. Without this information, the manager risks setting reference conditions and subsequent criteria on the basis of present data alone, which may in fact be a degraded state. Valid historical information places the current information in its proper perspective.

- *Data Screening*

The first step in the process of either assessing historical observations and data sets or more current data is to review this material to determine the suitability of that information to support nutrient criteria development. Anecdotal information and observations are valuable, but the sources must be carefully considered. Fishermen’s accounts, local sport fishing news stories, and the observational logs of scientific field crews are all legitimate sources of information, but they are subject to different levels of scrutiny before a trend is determined. The same applies to different databases. Nutrient information gathered for the purpose of identifying failing waste water treatment plants can not be assessed in the same light as similar data collected to determine overall lake quality or trophic state. The analytical procedures used, type of sampling design and equipment, and sample preservation are other variables which must also be considered in any data review and compilation. Once this screening is done, the compiled data may be sorted according to named lakes or reservoirs.

- *Nutrient Data Collection and Assessment*

USEPA has initiated the data collection and assessment process by screening the existing STORET database for information on lakes, reservoirs, streams, and coastal waters with respect to the four initial parameters of concern: total nitrogen, total phosphorus, chlorophyll-a, and Secchi depth. These four original parameters were originally selected for robustness and conservativeness of estimation, however the preliminary screening of the STORET data also revealed that these measurements are also relatively abundant in the data base. While this is an entirely appropriate starting point for nutrient criteria development, States and Tribes are not expected to confine their investigations and data selection for enrichment assessment and criteria development to only these variables.

States and Tribes are encouraged to select measures above and beyond these initial characteristics which contribute to the most appropriate and reliable assessment of the enrichment of the waters of their region. In particular, it is advisable to use both *causal indicators* (the nutrients introduced to the system especially species of nitrogen and phosphorus, and perhaps silica, and carbon as indicated) and *response indicators* (those measures of biotic productivity and activity reflecting the enrichment of the system including: chlorophyll *a*; Secchi depth; turbidity; algal taxa; plankton taxa; dissolved oxygen; macrophyte taxa, extent and biomass; and fish taxa and numbers.

The combination of nutrient and biological system response information will yield the most definitive and comprehensive criteria. To use only causal or only response variables in the criteria leaves the State or Tribe in jeopardy of not protecting the waters from over-enrichment. For example, an offensive water body covered with an algal scum may be low in the causal variables of reactive N and P because they are tied up in biomass (In fact, *Total N* and *Total P* were selected by EPA to avoid this problem). Therefore the lake in question may meet those criteria, but not its designated or existing use. The converse may also occur in which a highly enriched system with a rapid flushing rate appears to be acceptable when only the biota and dissolved oxygen are measured, but the load of nutrients being delivered downstream is degrading the receiving waters. Using a balanced combination of both causal and response variables in the criteria together with careful attention to seasonal variability should mitigate against these false positive and false negative results.

(c) Candidate Variables for Criteria Setting *(Chapter 5*)

EPA is beginning the nutrient criteria development program with a survey of national computerized data sets such as STORET and NAWQA for Total Phosphorus, Total Nitrogen, chlorophyll *a*, and Secchi depth. These are believed to be the most common variables recorded with respect to enrichment investigations. The information will be screened for suitability and then plotted on regional maps of the U.S. for use by the Regional Nutrient Coordinators and Technical Assistance Groups described above, and by the States. This being the case, it is reasonable for individual States and Tribes to begin with the same four indicators although other causal and response variables are also discussed later in this manual (see Chapter 5).

(d) Establishing Reference Conditions *(Chapter 6)*

Candidate reference lakes can be determined from compiled data and with the help of regional experts familiar with the lake resources of the area. There are two recommended ways to go about this. One is to select those lakes believed to be minimally impacted by human activity, e.g. with little or no riparian or watershed development. These lakes should be reviewed and visited to confirm their “natural” status. When satisfied with this list, a mean value (adjusted for seasonal and spatial variation) for TP, TN, chlorophyll *a*, Secchi depth or other turbidity indicator, and other appropriate enrichment indicators can be prepared for each lake based on existing and/or new data collections. A lower percentile, perhaps 25 percent (because these lakes represent the best obtainable and most “natural” condition so some allowance for variation should be made) can then be selected as the reference condition for each value.

Another option is to plot the frequency distribution of all of the lake data presently available by each variable and selecting percentiles for TP, TN, chlorophyll *a*, Secchi depth and other similarly appropriate variables. An upper percentile reflecting high nutrient quality can then be selected for each variable, perhaps 75 percent (because in this instance the pool of information likely includes lakes of considerably less than “natural” trophic condition) can be selected as the reference condition for each value.

The choice of the twenty-fifth and the seventy-fifth percentiles for the selected reference lakes and the random sample reference or census of all lakes in a class respectively, is a rational but qualitative decision. It represents the effort to avoid imposing an undue penalty on high quality mesotrophic lakes in regions where the lakes are predominately oligotrophic. By selecting a lower percentile of the reference lakes, there is a greater likelihood that more of the broader population of lakes will comply.

Conversely, in regions of intense cultural enrichment, a higher percentile of the distribution of the remaining lakes used as reference must be selected to avoid establishing criteria based on degraded conditions. The quarterly increments were chosen as a reasonable division of the data sets recognizable by the public, and the twenty-fifth and seventy-fifth quartiles as reasonable and traditional fractions of the range and frequency of distribution. This approach promotes water quality enhancement and has broad application over the country.

While these quantitative values are believed appropriate to the objective of the program, we recognize that some variation about such percentiles may be necessary. Certainly in severely degraded areas even a seventy-fifth percentile may be insufficient, and some higher fraction of the remaining reference values may be required. On the other hand, where all lakes or reservoirs are in remarkably good condition relative to cultural enrichment, the acceptable fraction of the reference condition may be justifiably lowered. The key point here is the presentation of a defensible scientific rationale for the determination. Otherwise the EPA presumes the above guidance will be appropriate.

It is intended that these two frequency distributions, with different quartiles, will produce a similarly appropriate reference condition - all other factors being equal. In either case a number is generated which can be used as an initial reference preliminary to criteria development, and as a source of comparison for individual lakes in the class.

This is the beginning of the process which eventually leads to the adoption of nutrient criteria as part of State or Tribal water quality standards. Other factors which must be addressed along the way are: gaps in the database which will have to be filled by additional data collections, possible biases in the data or data interpretation (especially if the information was originally collected for another purpose such as fishery management or waste water investigations), sampling errors by field teams and equipment changes or measurement errors introduced by changes in analytical techniques.

(e) Nutrient Criteria Development *(Chapter 7)*

- *Nutrient Criteria Components*

The move from data review and data gathering to criteria development involves a sequence of five interrelated elements:

- Examination of the historical record or paleolimnological evidence.
- Compilation of reference condition data.

  In situations where a class of lakes in question are all significantly impaired and none can be perceived as approximately “natural”, than the best quality remaining constitutes the present day example of a reference condition. In this instance the reverse of the earlier example of pre-selected minimally impaired reference lakes is true. Because most of the chosen lakes are assumed to be at least somewhat degraded, an upper percentile should be selected as a basis for the reference condition, perhaps the seventy-fifth percentile. To do otherwise is to ultimately lower the criteria to the level of present degradation and no restoration of the over enrichment condition will be achieved.

Remember that the present day reference condition is only part of the criteria development process; historical conditions, data extrapolations, and the best objective judgment of the technical assistance group including concern for downstream impacts are the other components which will collectively establish the criteria.

The significantly altered systems below the regional reference condition would use an upper quartile as an interim objective or goal as work progressed toward restoration of those waters and establishment viable nutrient criteria. While there are naturally eutrophic or even hypereutrophic systems, in most cases such systems are the result of significant human degradation by land use or effluent discharges. These locales are usually blatantly obvious and tend to require the least sophisticated investigations to set interim nutrient objectives or restoration goals.

- In some instances empirical modeling or surrogate data sets may be used where insufficient information exists. This may be the case especially with reservoirs or significantly developed watersheds.
- The objective and comprehensive interpretation of all of this information by a panel of specialists selected for this purpose (i.e., the RTAG). These experts should have established regional reputations and expertise in a variety of complimentary fields such as limnology, ecology, nutrient chemistry, and lake management.
- Finally, the criterion selected should first meet the optimal nutrient condition for that class of waterbody in the absence of cultural impacts and protect the designated use of that waterbody. Second, it should be reviewed to ensure that the level proposed does not entail adverse nutrient loadings to downstream waterbodies. In designating uses for a waterbody and developing criteria to protect those uses, the State or Tribe must take into consideration the water quality standards of downstream waters. This concern for downstream effect can be extended all the way to coastal waters, but in practice the immediate downstream receiving waters will be the area of greatest attention for the resource manager. This impact supersedes the level of optimal enrichment for the target lake waters. If a downstream impact is expected, the criteria for that lake or class of lakes should be revised downward accordingly.

Once the initial criteria (either Regional or State/Tribal) have been selected, they should be verified and calibrated by testing the sampling and analytical methods and criteria values against waterbodies of known conditions. This is to ensure that the system operates as expected. This can be accomplished either by field trials or by use of an existing data base the quality of which has been assured. This process may lead to refinements of either the techniques or the criteria.

It should be noted that criteria may be developed for more than one parameter. For example all reference lakes of a given class may be determined to manifest characteristics of a particular level for TP concentration, TN concentration, chlorophyll *a*, and Secchi depth. These four measures will comprise four criteria levels appropriate to optimal nutrient quality. EPA expects a given test lake to meet or surpass these levels for at least TN and TP and one of the two response variables, and that a scientifically valid explanation will be derived for the remaining exception before it can be determined to meet the criteria. The policy for such application will be developed by the State or Tribe in consultation with EPA. The point here is that these four (or more) parameters used in this illustration are expected to be interrelated, and a consistent response for most if not all of them gives a level of confidence to the resource manager that he has evaluated the lake properly.

When a clear plurality of the criteria is not observed, further investigation is indicated to ascertain the true condition of the lake before a decision is made. This approach of using multiple related indicators and resultant criteria is much preferable to using a single variable. While the risk of conflicting information is present, this is better than making a serious management decision based on only one indicator for a complex ecosystem. Further, the conflicting information which may result is more informative and suggestive of system dynamics than a simplistic “yes or no” response that comes with only one criterion.

- *Assessing Attainment with Criteria*

A rule of compliance is then established for the criteria which have been selected for each indicator variable. The four initial variables include two causal variables (TN and TP) and two response variables (chlorophyll *a* and Secchi depth or a similar indicator of turbidity). Failure to meet either of the causal criteria should be sufficient to require remediation. However if the causal criteria are met, but some combination of response criteria are not met, then there should be some form of decision making protocol to resolve the question of whether the lake in question meets the nutrient criteria or not. There are two approaches to this:

- Establish a decision making rule equating all of the criteria.
- Establish an index which accomplishes the same result by inserting the data into an equation which relates the multiple variables in a nondimensional comprehensive score.

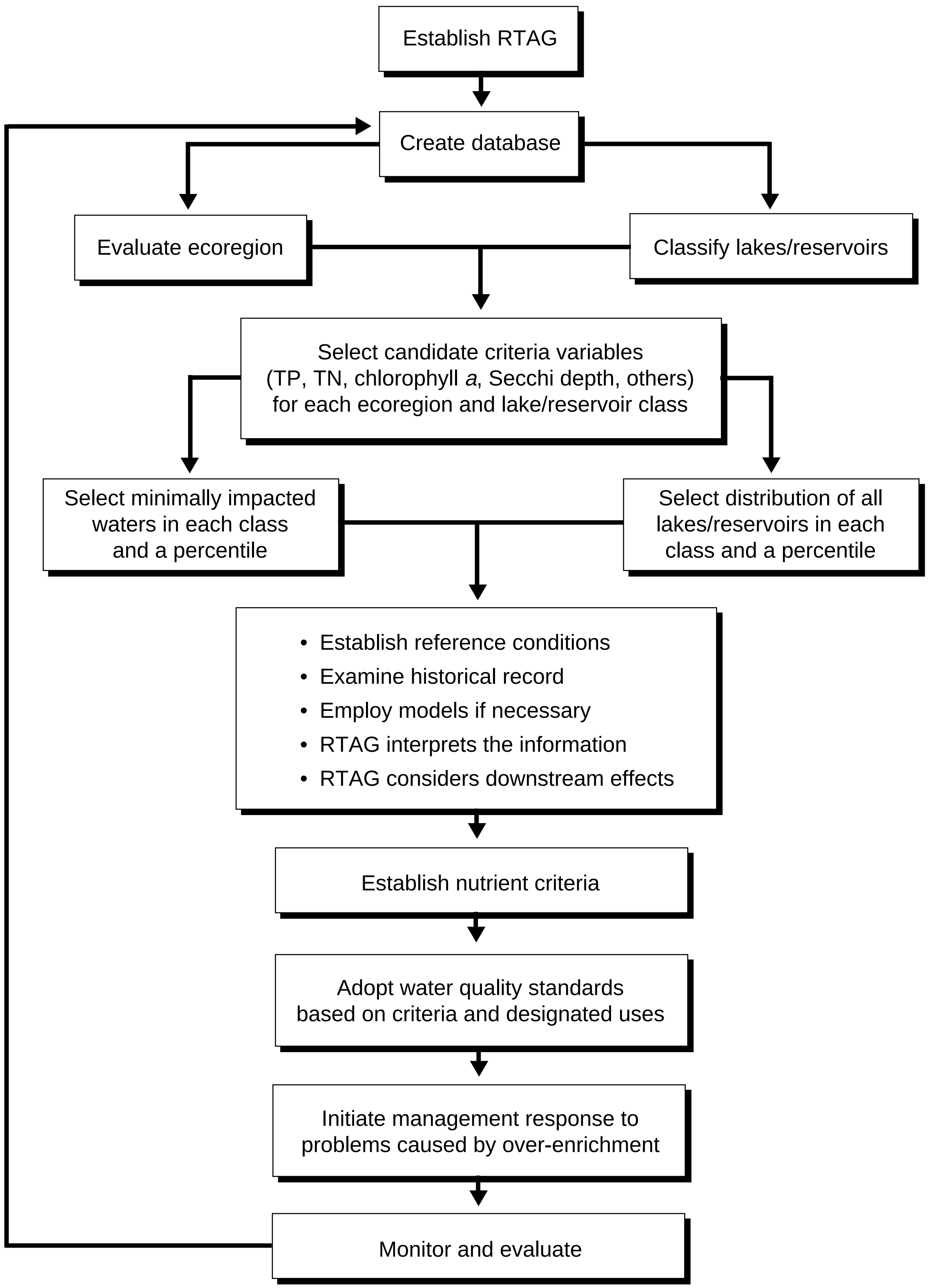
Criteria, once developed and adopted into their water quality standards by a State or Tribe, are submitted to EPA for review and approval (see 40 CFR 131). Currently, 40 CFR 131.21 provides that such State and Tribal water quality standards are in effect upon adoption by the State or Tribe. EPA is proposing (FR 64: 37072, July 9, 1999) that such new and revised standards, if adopted after the effective date of the final rule, will not be used for Clean Water Act purposes until approved by EPA, unless they are more stringent that the standards previously in effect.

(f) Management Response *(Chapter 8)*

There are a variety of management responses possible to the over-enrichment problem identified by the use of nutrient criteria. Chapter 8 describes a ten-step process which permits the resource manager to evaluate and select the best of these approaches to accomplish improvements in water resource condition. The emphasis is on developing a scientifically responsible, practical, and cost effective management plan.

The chapter also describes three basic categories which encompass all management activities: education, funding, and regulation. It closes with the admonition to always carefully evaluate the relative success of the management project, report results, and continue monitoring the status of the water resource.

Figure 1.2: Flow Chart of the Nutrient Criteria Development Process



CHAPTER 2

The Basis for Lake and Reservoir Nutrient Criteria

A. Historical Perspective

Large-scale comparative studies of lakes have enabled scientists to identify key variables that influence lake structure and processes (Peters, 1986). This empirical approach has its roots in regional studies (e.g., Naumann and Thieneman) and in early among-lake comparisons of lake function such as the role of morphometry on lake productivity (Rawson, 1995) and nutrient input regulation of lake fertility (Edmondson, 1961).

The eutrophication process was quantified by Vollenweider (1968, 1975, 1976) which brought the large-scale comparative approach to the forefront of limnology. Vollenweider developed a mass balance model using literature data from a diverse population of temperate lakes to demonstrate a surprisingly strong relationship between nutrient inputs to lakes and concentration of nutrients within the lake. This relationship was sufficiently powerful to stand out against other sources of among-lake variation and signaled that nutrient loading, as modified by hydrology, morphology and in-lake sedimentation, was the dominant factor explaining lake eutrophication.

The element phosphorus was the focus of study because overwhelming evidence suggested that phosphorus limited algal growth in many aquatic systems (Schindler, 1977). Phosphorus values were highly correlated with algal biomass in lakes (Sakamoto, 1966); in turn, water clarity was shown to vary with algal levels (Edmondson, 1972). With these linkages quantified, the science of lake management arose around the premise that reductions in nutrient loads would reverse eutrophication, as measured by reduced nutrient concentrations, algal levels and greater water clarity.

Empirical models provided limnologists with a quantitative basis for estimating the level of response to be expected from a given change in nutrient load from point and nonpoint sources. Models were the tools for forecasting the capacity of a lake to withstand change in its trophic state with various degrees of human development in its catchment (Dillon and Rigler, 1975). Recently, land use, as a surrogate for external nutrient loading, was used to effectively predict algal chlorophyll in lakes (Meeuwig and Peters, 1996); the strength of this approach stems from the strong correlation between nutrient losses and land use practices in catchments (Smart et al., 1980). This linkage of land use to chlorophyll, a widely accepted measure of lake trophic state, is additional evidence for the importance of external control on lake processes.

The large-scale comparative approach placed individual lakes within a continuum, from least to most fertile. With this understanding, lakes lost some of their individuality because scientists now viewed them within the context of this continuum. The functional relations between external nutrient loading, algal biomass and water clarity were summarized in a small number of general models. These models were typically based on regression analyses of data from individual lakes, averaged over a sampling season. The models quantified large-scale lake functions and provided the conceptual basis for lake management and restoration.

Because these early data were drawn from a diverse group of lakes, both in terms of lake type and geographical location, these models are often referred to as “global models.” An underlying assumption was that processes responsible for the large cross-sectional patterns in these global relations also operate within single systems over time (Prairie and Marshall, 1995). About the time of Vollenweider’s work, Edmondson (1972) applied virtually the same concepts to data covering the enrichment and recovery of Lake Washington. Edmondson’s work was tangible confirmation that a single lake responded to nutrient loading as the pattern drawn from the data of many lakes would suggest. The remarkable feature during the 1970's was that a quantitative paradigm for lake function had been proposed based largely on data drawn from the literature. It was a synthesis of ideas from earlier descriptive and empirical studies. A feature of predictions from empirical models was that there was a great uncertainty in them; many models exhibited an order of magnitude variation. This variation was a point of concern and the focus of subsequent study.

During the two decades since the empirical period of the mid-1970's, lake management has been influenced by several major thrusts which have modified, but not invalidated, the work of that period. With expanded data sets over the past twenty years, the original global generalizations have been modified showing that in highly enriched lakes algal biomass does not increase in a uniformly linear relationship to phosphorus in all lakes (McCauley et al., 1989; Prairie et al., 1989; Watson et al., 1992) because other environmental factors also play a role. The Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD, 1982) project was an early effort to systematically gather data and quantify the relationship between nutrient load in waters and their trophic reaction. This project, composed of four regional studies (Alpine, Nordic, Reservoir and Shallow Lakes, and North American), attempted to corroborate Vollenweider’s generalizations. Its approach shifted the focus of among-lake comparisons from a global scale to studies within regions and studies of specific lake types.

Since then several regional studies have used the comparative approach to generate empirical models specifically for local conditions. These regional studies have demonstrated the importance of other factors regulating algal biomass in lakes. Four other factors include nitrogen (Canfield, 1983; Pridmore, 1985), light limitation due to suspended solids (Hoyer and Jones, 1983; Jones and Knowlton, 1993), lake morphometry (Riley and Prepas, 1985), and grazing by herbivores (Quiros, 1990).

B. The Nutrient Paradigm

The concept of nutrient criteria is based on the idea that nutrients produce changes in lakes and reservoirs that are considered to be detrimental to the function or use of the waterbody. This idea of nutrient control of waterbody function is not new; it can be traced back to when Einar Naumann, the Swedish limnologist, elucidated the major part of the nutrient paradigm in 1929. His ideas of the relationship between nutrients and lakes can be summarized in the following four statements:

- The primary factors that determine algal biomass (the amount of plant organic material) are the plant nutrients, phosphorus and nitrogen.
- The geology (and land use) within the lake's watershed determines the amount of nutrients that enter the lake, and, therefore, plant biomass.
- Changes in the plant biomass affect the entire lake's biology.
- There is a natural ontogeny to lakes; the amount of plant biomass and, therefore, the entire biology of the lake increases as the lake ages.

Although there have been many significant additions and improvements in our understanding of lakes since Naumann, his original concept of nutrients remains the basis of the nutrient paradigm. Below, each statement is examined as it refers to the need for and the development of nutrient criteria for lakes.

1. Phosphorus and Nitrogen as Limiting Factors for Algal Biomass

The primary factors that determine algal biomass (production) are the plant nutrients, phosphorus and nitrogen. When Naumann suggested this concept, he was probably drawing on a much older concept, Justis Leibig's Law of the Minimum. The Law, as it is formulated today, states that the factor that is in shortest supply relative to the needs of the plants limits the growth of those plants. The concept is central to the nutrient paradigm in lakes because it insists that very few factors (usually only one factor, often a plant nutrient such as nitrogen or phosphorus) will actually limit plant growth.

If only one factor, such as phosphorus, was always limiting, the task of developing nutrient criteria would be a simple matter of determining limits on that single factor. Unfortunately, the factor that limits plant biomass may change seasonally or over longer periods of time, may vary depending on the land use, or may vary regionally. It would make little sense to construct a single nutrient criterion when that nutrient may not necessarily limit a target lake or lakes. It is for that reason that the emphasis of this document is the development of nutrient criteria based on both the nutrient inputs and the biological response.

The causal variables such as phosphorus and nitrogen are essential criteria because they will be the limits necessary to establish management objectives and are usually directly related to discharge runoff abatement efforts. While phosphorus is the limiting factor for most lakes and reservoirs, in some regions the nutrient paradigm centers on nitrogen rather than phosphorus (Canfield, 1983; Pridmore, 1985; Jones et al., 1989). These regions are often in the subtropics or at high latitude or altitude (Wurtsbaugh et al., xx; Morris and Lewis, 1988) but are also found in parts of Britain (Moss, 1997). In these lakes, nitrogen rather than phosphorus explains the among-lake variance in algal chlorophyll, and Chl-TN regressions match the "fit and form" of Chl-TP regressions developed for phosphorus limited temperate lakes. The reason for nitrogen limitation is not yet understood because of a long-held tenet in limnology that states that nitrogen fixation will compensate for shortfalls (Schindler, 1977) and that nitrogen limitation is not a persistent condition. This belief does not seem as universal as once thought (Knowlton and Jones, 1996). In some regions nitrogen limitation may be a function of abundant phosphorus in the geological formation of the region (Canfield, 1983; Moss et al., 1997).

Nitrogen limitation may also be tied to efficient nitrogen cycling in subtropical forests or may be a function of nitrogen uptake by rice and other crops in the subtropics. In high elevation lakes phosphorus may be contributed by soil weathering whereas nitrogen is rare in these low organic soils. A recent literature review showed that nitrogen limitation was about as common as phosphorus limitation (Elser et al., 1990). Detailed water chemistry data from the Midwestern lakes suggests that nitrogen values in the epilimnion fall during summer but phosphorus values remain more constant. These data suggest phosphorus may be cycled more efficiently than nitrogen and that without external inputs, late summer nitrogen limitation can be expected. These results do not imply that continued focus on P for eutrophication control is unwarranted, however, a better understanding of the frequency and extent of nitrogen limitation is warranted to discern lake function. Nitrogen criteria as well as phosphorus criteria are appropriate.

The response variables such as chlorophyll *a* and algal or macrophyte species or biomass indicate the relative success of the nutrient management effort. By carefully incorporating both the causal and response elements, a State or Tribe should be able to fine-tune its criteria to meet the necessary enrichment levels for a given class of lakes.

2. The Role of the Watershed

The geology (and land use) within the lake's watershed determines the amount of nutrients that enter the lake, and therefore plant biomass. This statement is probably the primary reason for the development of nutrient criteria; human activity in the watershed affects a lake's function. It is the reason behind the Nutrient Workshop's (USEPA, 1996) conclusion that changes in land use can serve as an early warning system for changes in lakes.

In simplest terms, the lake's nutrient concentration is primarily affected by the rate of weathering and erosion from the soils in the watershed. If the underlying geological structure is granitic, then the rates of weathering will be low and both the productivity of the terrestrial vegetation and the concentration of nutrients in the runoff from the watershed will be low. On the other hand, if the underlying bedrock is sedimentary, the weathering rates will be higher and the fertility of the soil and the nutrient content of the runoff water will be higher as well. Consequently, Naumann (1929) observed that lakes in regions of sedimentary rock had higher algal densities (were greener) than lakes in granite-based watersheds.

Human activity has at least two effects on the natural load of nutrient input to lakes: activity disturbs the overlying vegetation, exposing the soil to increased weathering and erosion, and activity adds easily-erodible nutrient-containing material, such as fertilizers and animal waste, into the watershed. As the biological surface of an undisturbed watershed is disrupted, and, as people move into the watershed, it can be expected that there will be increased soil and nutrient runoff.

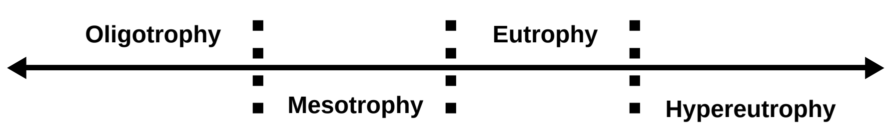
Of course the degree of disturbance relative to the size of the lake will affect the impact of the disturbance; the building of a summer cottage may not have the impact on a lake as that of the clear-cutting of a forest or of the development of a condominium complex. The concept of absorption capacity is based on the assumption that the lake has a certain capacity to absorb the impact of disturbance. This concept, although comforting, probably has little basis in fact.

Impact, until demonstrated otherwise, is probably better thought of as a continuous response to nutrient increases. The degree of change will depend on other factors, such as the size of the lake, and the change may not be immediately or even ever detectable to humans or their monitoring instruments. However, whether detected or not, changes do occur. It is for this reason that watershed disturbance is a sensitive early warning of lake change. The point to be made is that biological impact within the lake will be directly related to the increased amount of nutrient loading, and that impact will occur, whether or not it is detected.

Einar Naumann, however, used the relationship between nutrients and plants to establish a *trophic state classification*. He probably began his classification scheme with the perfectly reasonable goal of classifying lakes into those with low (*oligotrophic*) and high (*eutrophic*) plant biomass. Oligotrophic lakes were clear, with little algae, while eutrophic lakes were green. He then added to his classification system the causal factors that produced this degree of greenness, for example the amounts of nitrogen or phosphorus. He called these the "factors of production." Oligotrophic lakes were those that had low production (biomass) because they were low in nutrient concentrations. Eutrophic lakes were green because there were abundant nutrients to support the growth of algae.

The combination of the factors that affected production (causal factors) with plant production itself (response variable) allowed for a suite of trophic classes which dissected lakes into groups of varying production based on the factor or factors that were thought to limit that productivity. The classic oligotrophy-eutrophy axis was based on limitation by nutrients. The *mesotrophic* category was added to describe situations intermediate between oligotrophy and eutrophy. The term *hypereutrophic*, or hypertrophic, was added by Wetzel (1966) to describe situations of extreme eutrophy. This continuum of trophic "states" is illustrated in **Figure 2.1**.

Figure 2.1: A Trophic Continuum



3. Trophic State Cascade

Naumann was very insightful in recognizing that the components of the lake are an interconnected system; as one component, the plants, responds to nutrient inputs, other biological, chemical, and even physical components would be affected as well. Increases in nutrient loading do not necessarily directly affect any component other than the plants, but, by various pathways, other components of the lake ecosystem, such as the zooplankton, the fish, and hypolimnetic oxygen concentration, are affected as well. This “Trophic State Cascade” is depicted in **Figure 2.2**.

Because of these linkages between components, numerous variables may respond to varying degrees to increases in nutrients. Not only will algae or macrophytes increase, but zooplankton and fish biomass may increase as well, plant and animal species may change (with some going extinct) and hypolimnetic oxygen may be depleted. People react to the various changes or symptoms of lake condition reflected in the chemistry and biology that cascade from the change in loading, not directly to the change in loading or nutrient concentration itself.

This cascade of biological and chemical changes produces a wide variety of choices for the response variables needed to supplement the causal variables in the formulation of nutrient criteria. Choice of the response variable can be made based on sensitivity to change, cost of measurement and analysis, or importance to designated use.

4. Lake Aging

The idea that lakes undergo directional change in plant production as they age was probably related to the observation that shallower lakes appeared to have more plant biomass in them than deeper lakes. This observation later translated into the idea that increases in plant biomass were inevitable as a lake ages and fills in. This concept has lead to terms such as

Figure 2.2: The Trophic State Cascade

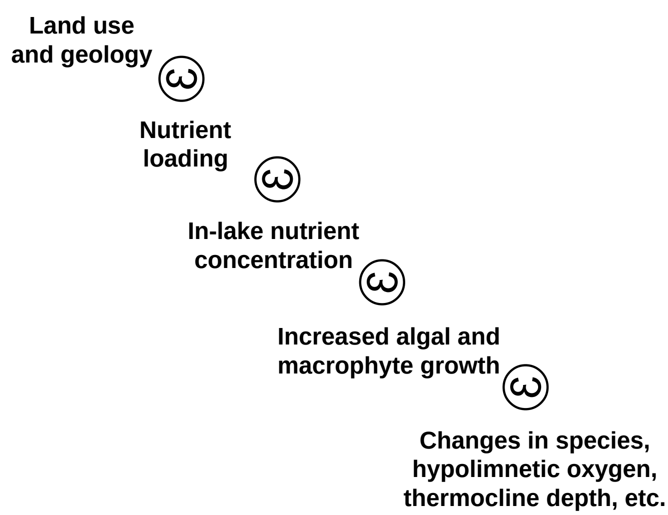
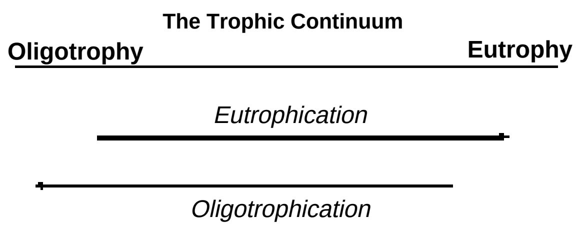


Figure 2.3: Eutrophication and Oligotrophication in Relation to the Trophic Continuum



natural eutrophication to describe inevitable increases in plant biomass as a lake becomes older and shallower. If natural eutrophication is thought to proceed at a rate related to inputs from the watershed, then we might expect to see accelerated rates of eutrophication if cultural influences occur in the watershed (*cultural eutrophication*).

If trophic state is a description of the biological condition of the lake, eutrophication describes a lake that is becoming more eutrophic (**Figure 2.3**). Specifically, it describes a change in the direction of eutrophy. A lake does not have to become eutrophic to have undergone eutrophication, it only has to move in the direction of eutrophy. *Oligotrophication* describes the process of a lake moving in the alternative direction, towards oligotrophy. This term is used less frequently, perhaps because the instances of lakes becoming less eutrophic are so rare.

The term *nutrient enrichment* is, in many, if not most instances, an alternative term for eutrophication. However, the emphasis in that term is on the increase in nutrients rather than on the lake's response to that enrichment. If causal factors, such as nutrient enrichment are closely linked via our terminology with the lake response, problems can arise if, for example, a lake's biology changes without any change in nutrient loading, or, conversely, if nutrient loading occurred without a coincident change in biology. These are not just hypothetical situations. The addition or removal of a benthivorous fish, such as bullhead or carp, can change the internal regeneration of nutrients and change the biological condition of the lake, without any enrichment, or at least external enrichment, of the lake. The increase in grazing on algae, because of the addition of a piscivore or the removal of the zooplanktivores, can also alter the amount of plant biomass without the need of an alteration of nutrient loading. These manipulations, often called *biomanipulation* (Shapiro, et al, 1975), are a type of lake manipulation that can alter the state of the lake without a change in nutrient load.

The term, natural eutrophication, should not be confused with the term *naturally eutrophic*. The latter term describes lakes in watersheds where the natural load of nutrients is high despite the absence of human activity. Natural eutrophication describes a belief that lakes, presumably all lakes, have more plant material within them (become more eutrophic) as a natural part of becoming older.

The concept of natural eutrophication is probably correct to the extent that processes within the lake, such as nutrient regeneration, may enhance the effect of inputs from the watershed. The importance of these internal processes are still not well understood, especially along a gradient of lake aging. If becoming shallower were the only consideration, then the internal concentration of nutrient would only increase to a level as high as that in the incoming water. A lake in a watershed in which the concentrations of nutrients were very low in the incoming water would not become that much more eutrophic even if it did become shallower. However, a shallower lake may also have increased macrophyte growth and increased regeneration of nutrients from the sediments. In this case the biological response would become increasingly independent of the external supply of nutrients.

A difficulty with dwelling on the possibility of natural eutrophication is that it emphasizes an inevitability of the eutrophication process, and it takes the focus off the immediate effects of the watershed on the lake. Natural eutrophication is a process that is measured in terms of thousands of years, while the problems we most often encounter with lakes are the impact of processes that take only a few years to develop. Watershed disturbance can rapidly move a lake to a new level of nutrient concentration and biological response. More important, in most or many lakes, that response is, to some extent, reversible; we have not just moved rapidly down an irreversible path. Cultural eutrophication is, in fact, a reversible process, and nutrient criteria are an important element in this reversal.

C. Connecting Watershed Loading to the Lake: A Mass Balance Model Approach

Prior to the late 1960's, there was little theoretical or quantitative interest in the influence of the watershed on the nutrient or on the trophic status of lakes. Indicative of this attitude might be the 1965 paper by G.E. Hutchinson, "The Lacustrine Microcosm Reconsidered." This paper, like many others before it back to Stephen Forbes' original 1887 paper the "The Lake as a Microcosm" treated the lake as a self-contained entity, relatively isolated from its surroundings.

This limnological isolationism came to an abrupt halt in the late 1960's with a spate of papers all remarking on the importance of the watershed on the nature and trophic status of the lake. These papers included G.E. Hutchinson (1969) and, probably the most persuasive, Richard Vollenweider's 1971 publication, "Scientific fundamentals of the eutrophication of lakes and flowing waters, with particular reference to nitrogen and phosphorus as factors in eutrophication." This major review of the impact of nutrient loading on lakes followed a paper by Vollenweider (1969) which is probably one of the most influential pieces on modeling in the limnological literature. This earlier work was so important because, for the first time it showed us how to predict the impact of nutrient loading on the nutrient concentration of lakes and reservoirs.

Like many earlier nutrient loading models, Vollenweider used a *mass balance model* for the basis of the prediction (see Section 8.B). Below is a basic review of Vollenweider's model and how it is used to link loading to concentration in a lake or reservoir.

The term mass balance model comes from the assumption that a substance such as phosphorus cannot just appear or disappear from a reservoir; it must come from somewhere and it must also go somewhere. The phosphorus going into the reservoir must either go out again through some outflow, be sedimented to the bottom, incorporated into macrophyte biomass, or remain in the water in either dissolved or particulate forms. It is this phosphorus that remains in the water that is of interest because it is the amount that is available for algal growth.

Mass balance modeling is done in a manner similar to keeping a checking account. The total amount of phosphorus entering the reservoir (loading) each year is measured. Loading describes the total amount of material being moved in a stream in a given amount of time. The loading from any source, *i*, is calculated as:

$$\text{Loading } (J_i) = \text{Water Discharge } (Q_i) \times \text{Concentration } (C_i)$$

or,

$$J_i = Q_i C_i$$

The external loading, symbolized by Vollenweider by the letter, J, can be calculated as the sum of the loading from all the external sources (I) to the lake.

$$J = \sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i C_i$$

Loading is often used to measure export of a nutrient or sediment from a watershed. For example, it is important to gauge the effects of farming practices on erosion, so we might calculate the tons of sediment removed from a watershed over a year. On the other hand, if the stream enters a lake or reservoir, we might want to know how much material is entering that body of water. In this case, nutrient loading might affect water quality, and sediment loading might affect the fill-in rate. The calculation of Total Maximum Daily Loads (TMDLs) are simply another method of calculating loading to a given point in a stream, or as relevant to this discussion, to a lake or reservoir.

The prediction of the internal concentration of a substance in a lake is also done using a mass balance equation. The appropriate mass balance for this prediction is based on the idea that the rate of change of the total amount of a material (M) in a lake (dM/dt) is dependent on the total amount of material that enters a lake (J) and the total amount that leaves in the same time period.

$$dM/dt = \left(\sum Q_i C_i\right) - Q_o C_o$$

or

$$dM/dt = J - Q_o C_o$$

If the reservoir is not rapidly changing from one year to the next, the amount coming in one year should be equal to the amount going out:

$$\text{Inflow} = \text{Outflow} \quad (\text{i.e., } dM/dt = 0)$$

or

$$J = Q_o C_o$$

If we assume, as did Vollenweider, that the lake is completely mixed, then the lake concentration is equal to the outflow concentration:

$$C_{lake} = C_o$$

therefore, the amount entering the lake will be equal to the amount leaving.

$$J = Q_o C_{lake}$$

Rearranging this equation, we obtain an equation predicting the concentration in the lake based on the external loading of the substance and the outflowing discharge of water.

$$C_{lake} = J / Q_o$$

Notice that the term $[J / Q_o]$ has the units of concentration. Consider that it is the incoming loading divided by the outgoing water discharge.

This model is designed to predict the concentration of any *conservative* material. A conservative material, such as chloride or sodium, does not sediment within the lake basin, and the amount leaving the basin over the outflow should be equal to the amount entering. Conservative materials are not very interesting in themselves, but they are used as indicators of the accuracy of budgets of materials that do sediment within the lake. If the input of a conservative element is not equal to the output, then some other source of water and/or material has been neglected.

A *non-conservative* material, such as phosphorus, is one that is lost from the water column (e.g. sedimentation) within a lake basin. As some material is lost from the water column, the input loading is not equal to the output loading. To model a non-conservative material, a sedimentation term must be added to the equation:

$$\text{Input} = \text{Output} + \text{Sedimentation}$$

Sedimentation was considered by Vollenweider to be proportional to the mass of the substance in the lake, M. The total amount of material in the lake (M) is calculated as

$$M = C_{lake} V$$

where: V = volume of the lake (m^3)

Vollenweider considered the amount of material lost to the sediments. This is designated by sM, where s is a first order fractional loss of the mass settled per unit time (1/t) and M is the mass of substance in lake ($C_{lake}V$). The sedimentation coefficient, s, is really a net sedimentation term, because the material may not only settle out of the water column but may also be resuspended into the column from the sediments.

The mass balance equation, with the added sedimentation term, becomes

$$dM/dt = J - Q_o C_o - sM$$

Vollenweider then assumed that over a calender year the system would be near or at steady state, and the mass balance equation becomes:

$$J = Q_o C_o + sM$$

Note that all the terms still have the dimensions of amount per time.

A predictive equation for predicting the lake concentration from loading can be produced by substituting C_{lake} for C_o (again assuming that the lake concentration is equal to the outflow concentration) and substituting $C_{lake}V$ for M.

$$J = Q_o C_{lake} + sC_{lake}V$$

Rearranging, we obtain the predictive equation

$$C_{lake} = \frac{J}{Q_0 + sV}$$

The equation can be further rearranged into the form

$$C_{lake} = \frac{J}{Q_0}\left[\frac{1}{1+sV/Q_0}\right]$$

With this equation, several things became clearer about loading.

- Vollenweider only considers the "total" form of the substance. He does not discriminate between dissolved and particulate forms.
- The term, (J / Q_o), has the dimensions of concentration (mg/m^{-3}) and represents the *average incoming concentration* of the substance (Vollenweider, 1976) assuming evaporation is minimal. This term is sometimes replaced by a symbol for incoming concentration, C_I.
- The term, $(1 / (1 + s(V/Q_o))$, is really a description of the fraction of the incoming concentration that is *not* retained within the basin. In some models, retention is represented by the symbol, R, and the term, $(1 / (1 + s(V/Q_o))$, by (1-R).
- The term, (V / Q_o), has the units of time and is the Hydrologic Residence Time, T or τ, which represents the average time that water remains within the lake.

Using these simpler symbols, the equation can be reduced to a simple statement of the relationship between loading and lake concentration:

$$C_{lake} = C_i\left[\frac{1}{1+sT}\right]$$

where: C_i = average inflow concentration

Although relatively simple, the equation illustrates the major aspects of prediction with mass balance models and trophic state.

- The concentration of a substance such as phosphorus in the reservoir (C_{lake}) is directly determined by the concentration of that substance in the incoming streams (C_i). The higher the concentration in the streams entering a reservoir, the higher the nutrient concentration will be in the reservoir itself.

- Internal factors, such as water residence time (T) and the net sedimentation coefficient (s) determine the amount of material that is sedimented, and therefore lost, from the water column. The longer the water residence time, the greater the amount of material that will be sedimented within the reservoir, and the lower the reservoir concentration will be.

Additional terms have been added to the equation to account for release of a nutrient from the sediments into the open water, or for the biological availability of the incoming phosphorus. These additional terms can make the predictions more specific to the particular reservoir being modeled. Refer to Chapter 9 for a discussion of these models.

D. Trophic State Classification Systems

The concept of trophic state, with its relationship of the watershed to the chemistry and biology of the water body, has become one of the primary methods of classifying lakes. Despite controversies of definition, it has endured and probably will endure because of several important reasons.

- *History and tradition*, the language and implications of trophic state are deeply ingrained in limnology. In a sense the concept of trophic state is the nutrient paradigm.
- *Communication*, when a trophic state term, such as eutrophic or eutrophication, is used, there is a general agreement as to what a lake is like in terms of nutrients and biology. This implication of interrelationships tend to communicate far more information than can be implied with the statement of the value of a single variable.
- *Education*, the trophic state concept, even in qualitative terms, is a convenient vehicle to educate the public on the simplicity, and indeed on the complexity, of the relationship between land use and the biological consequences.

Trophic state classification may have begun as a continuum concept, but rapidly evolved into a classification of “types.” Most, but not all, existing trophic classification systems, or indices, reflect this typological emphasis. The representation of this type of classification scheme is simply of list of characteristics for a specific trophic type (**Table 2.1**). Lakes are assigned to a trophic class based on their agreement with the characteristics on the list. This type of classification runs into difficulty when specific variables may classify the lake in different categories. This happens when the correlation between variables is not strong.

The essence of a typological trophic classification is the belief that there is a real type of lake called “eutrophic,” in the sense that there is a real type of human called “young,” “middle aged,” or “elderly.” Lakes can, therefore, be classified and placed into one of these types. Eutrophication is the progressive directional change of a lake out of one type and into another. Once in a type, the lake takes on certain characteristics by which you can recognize and, therefore, classify it. Such classifications are easily recognized from lists of characteristics typical for each trophic state heading (**Table 2.1**).

The OECD index (Vollenweider and Kerekes, 1980 used a statistical approach to quantify the ranges of several variables within each trophic designation (**Table 2.2**). This index was derived by asking a group of scientists their opinion as to what was the average

Table 2.1: A Trophic Classification System Based on Lake Characteristics adapted from Rast and Lee (1987)

	------------*General Characteristic*------------	
Variable	**Oligotrophic**	**Eutrophic**
Total aquatic plant production	Low	High
Number of algal species	Many	Few
Characteristic algal groups	Greens, diatoms	Blue-greens
Rooted aquatic plants	Sparse	Abundant
Oxygen in hypolimnion	Present	Absent
Characteristic fish	Deep-dwelling, cold water fish such as trout, salmon, and cisco	Surface-dwelling, warm water fish such as pike, perch, and bass; also bottom-dwellers such as catfish and carp
Water quality for domestic and industrial use	Good	Poor

value for each trophic class for each variable. The summarized data were used to produce bell-shaped curves for each variable for each class (**Figure 2.4**). The overlap that resulted emphasized that lakes of the same concentrations may be in more than one trophic class.

The second approach to trophic classification assumes that trophic types are not real, but abstractions and, to some extent, arbitrary divisions of a continuum. This approach is similar to Naumann's original classification. In this case the discussions have been generally along the lines of what is the appropriate trophic state variable that should be divided into trophic state classes. The discussion of appropriate variables for classification will be continued in Chapter 5.

Some continuum-based classification indices emphasize that trophic state reflects a number of variables, recalling the multiple variable approach of typological schemes. For example, Huber et al. (1982) stated that "trophic state is the integrated expression of the nutritional status of a water body. As such, it is widely accepted that no single trophic indicator or parameter is adequate to completely describe and/or quantify the concept." Multiple variable indices differ from the typological indices largely in that they quantify the multiple variables found in the trophic state list of characteristics. These approaches emphasize the collection of quantitative data and are a major advance over qualitative listings.

Probably the most sophisticated of the multivariate indices is that of Brezonik and Shannon

Table 2.2: Trophic Status Classification Based on Water Quality Variables (after Vollenweider and Carekes, 1980)

Variable	Oligotrophic	Mesotrophic	Eutrophic
Total phosphorus			
mean	8	27	84
range (n)	3-18 (21)	11-96 (19)	16-390 (71)
Total nitrogen			
mean	660	750	1,900
range (n)	310-1600 (11)	360-1400 (8)	390-6100 (37)
Chlorophyll *a*			
mean	1.7	4.7	14
range (n)	0.3-4.5 (22)	3-11 (16)	2.7-78 (70)
Peak chlorophyll *a*			
mean	4.2	16	43
range (n)	1.3-11 (16)	5-50 (12)	10-280 (46)
Secchi depth (m)			
mean	9.9	4.2	2.4
range (n)	5.4-28 (13)	1.5-8.1 (20)	0.8-7.0 (70)

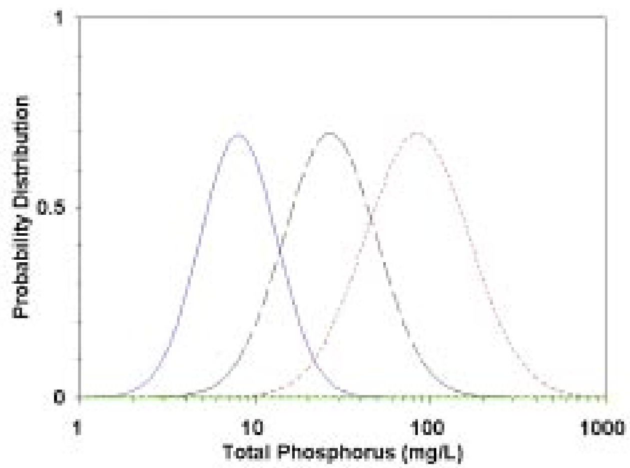
Note: Units are µg/l (or mg/m^3), except Secchi depth; means are geometric annual means (log 10), except peak chlorophyll *a*.

(1971) which uses principal components analysis to derive a trophic state index (TSI) based on seven variables (total phosphorus (TP), primary production, inverse of Secchi depth (1/SD), total organic nitrogen (TON), chlorophyll *a*, specific conductance, and the inverse Pearsall cation ratio ([Ca]+[Mg]/[Na]+[K]). Other less sophisticated indices generally combine unweighted variables by one means or another. The "EPA Index" (USEPA, 1974) ranked lakes based on "the percentage of the 200+ lakes exceeding Lake X in that parameter." The index was "simply the sum of the percentile ranks for each of the parameters used." The variables used were TP, dissolved phosphorus, Inorganic nitrogen, Secchi depth (500-Value (inches)), chlorophyll *a*, and minimum dissolved oxygen (15-DO_{min}).

These multivariate quantitative indices move trophic classification from a typological concept to one assuming a continuum of values, but suffer from several drawbacks. The indices require that all the variables be measured before an index value is derived, thus greatly increasing the cost and analytical time required. A missing value eliminates a TSI determination. Changes in a single variable will often be overlooked in the index if other indices do not change. Conversely, if index variables are correlated, then a change in one may trigger a change in a number of variables causing an exaggeration of the amount of change. Finally, a change in the index does not tell the reader what has changed; information is lost.

Carlson (1977) suggested returning trophic state to its first principals: a quantifiable plant biomass-based concept that could easily fit into existing and future nutrient and lake models.

Figure 2.4: Probability Distribution Curves for Total Phosphorus by Trophic Status Class



He did not redefine trophic state, but used Naumann's original idea of a classification according to plant biomass. Instead of the distinct typological classes he assumed algal biomass to be from a continuous range of values. He suggested that the commonly-used trophic classes were arbitrary divisions of the biomass continuum. In order to emphasize the continuum nature of a biomass-based trophic state, he used a numeric rather than a nomenclatural scale, dividing the range of algal biomass based on a doubling of Secchi depth, a variable which is affected by algal density.

The original Secchi depth equation in Carlson (1977), reproduced below, illustrates how the index was constructed.

$$TSI\ (SD) = 10 \left[6 - \frac{\text{1n SD}}{\text{1n 2}} \right]$$

The basic Secchi disk (SD) index was constructed from a doubling and halving of Secchi disk transparency. The base index value is a Secchi depth of 1 meter, the logarithm of which is zero.

$\ln 1 = 0$

$6 - 0 = 6$

$10 \times 6 = 60$

Therefore, the TSI of a 1 meter Secchi depth is 60. If the Secchi depth were 2 meters,

$\ln 2 / \ln 2 = 1$

$6 - 1 = 5$

$10 \times 5 = 50$

The index utilizes relationships between trophic variables to produce equations that allow the index to be calculated from variables other than Secchi depth. The indices for the chlorophyll and total phosphorus are derived in a similar manner, but, instead of a Secchi depth value in the numerator, the empirical relationship between chlorophyll or total phosphorus and Secchi depth is given instead. For example, the TSI equation for chlorophyll is:

$$TSI\ (CHL) = 10 \left[6 - \frac{2.04 - 0.68 \ln CHL}{\ln 2} \right]$$

The above forms of the equations may illustrate how the indices were derived, but they can be simplified for everyday use:

$\text{TSI (SD)} = 60 - 14.41 \ln \text{SD}$

$\text{TSI (CHL)} = 9.81 \ln \text{CHL} + 30.6$

$\text{TSI (TP)} = 14.42 \ln \text{TP} + 4.15$

The value of multiple equations is that the same TSI value should be obtained no matter what variable is used to calculate it (i.e., a “common scale”). This means that if data are missing for chlorophyll, for example, a similar value could be obtained from transparency.

Although these three variables should co-vary, they should not be averaged, because neither transparency nor TP are independent estimators of trophic state. Using transparency or phosphorus as an estimator of chlorophyll is very different than assuming equal and independent status of the variables. Secchi depth and total phosphorus should be used as a surrogate, not a covariate, of chlorophyll.

In essence this TSI scale is an indexed scale of algal biomass. Because it is directly related to lake phosphorus concentration, it fits easily into phosphorus loading models such as that of Vollenweider (1976). If a loading model can predict phosphorus concentration in the water, then the “trophic state” can be easily predicted as well. Work by Kratzer and Brezonik (1981) allows the index to also be predicted from nitrogen concentrations as well.

$$TSI(TN) = 54.45 + 14.43 \ln(TN)$$

[Nitrogen values must be in units of mg/L]

Their index could be used if there is any indication that nitrogen, rather than phosphorus was limiting. It can also be used as an indicator of the limiting nutrient. This aspect of the index will be explored in Chapter 10.

E. Uses of Trophic State Indices

Indices have several purposes. In some instances indices take uncorrelated variables and aggregate them into a single word or value so that a general condition may be easily communicated. For example, a pollution index might include concentrations of heavy metals, pesticides, and phosphorus, which may or may not be correlated, but could contribute to what the public considers to be "pollution." The multivariate trophic state indices are of this type. These indices assume that trophic state consists of a number of possible attributes of lakes, ranging from nutrient concentration to hypolimnetic oxygen depletion. An index is necessary to somehow combine these various ingredients into the trophic stew.

Alternatively, indices such as that of Carlson (1977) use the term "index" to mean that the variable measured is not "trophic state," but an indicator of trophic state. For Carlson, trophic state is plant biomass. Chlorophyll, transparency, or even total phosphorus are variables that can estimate biomass but are really not "living plant (autotroph) carbon." Even the measurement of organic carbon is not free from interferences from detritus or non-plant carbon. "Trophic state" is used as a surrogate for a real entity, plant biomass, that cannot be measured directly.

A third use of the term 'index' that combines aspects of the first and second definition is that of simplification of a concept of measurement. For example, few readers know that the Richter scale, used to describe the magnitude of an earthquake, is the maximum deviation of a needle on a seismograph 62 miles from the epicenter. Actually most do not need to know the mechanics of calculating the Richter scale in order to have a sense of the severity of an earthquake. In the same sense, trophic state indices are shorthand methods to convey information. Total phosphorus or chlorophyll have little value in communication unless the there is some standard to which the reader or listener can compare the value. In this case to be able to say "eutrophic" or TSI of 60 rather than "The chlorophyll concentration is 20 µg per liter" may convey information more easily because there are fewer terms to explain to an audience and fewer terms for the audience to put into the context of their own experiences.

F. Water Quality and Nutrient Criteria

Wuhrmann (1974) discusses monitoring in terms of "condition" and "quality." According to Wuhrmann, condition is defined by quantitatively measurable values which attempt to circumscribe the system or its constituents. These conditions are neither good nor bad, they simply represent a set of facts. Wuhrmann describes quality, on the other hand, as a "subjective statement on the grounds of arbitrary criteria deduced from a requirement by the water user, the administrator, the politician, the fisherman, etc." We are frequently expected to propose ways and means to change the quality of a water body into some other anticipated quality. This process involves "translation of vague quality parameters into concentration values of chemical species and/or a statement on biological conditions." Wuhrmann states that both "quality" and concentration presume knowledge of the correlation between the chemical, physical and biological condition and the desired ecosystem quality.

The discussion on the relationship between nutrient loading and trophic state is predicated on the idea that there are correlated and predictable relationships between nutrient loading, nutrient concentration, biological response to those nutrients by the plants in the water body, and associated consequences such as hypolimnetic anoxia. In Wuhrmann's terms we have been describing the "condition" of the water body. Land use, phosphorus concentration, transparency, algal chlorophyll, or the degree of anoxia are quantitative or qualitative descriptions of the state of the lake. There is no inherent good or bad associated with the condition found. Trophic state is an objective statement of this status.

Water quality is the interpretation that we, as humans, place on those values. Increased loading is neither good nor bad until someone places a qualitative judgement on that loading. A "high" phosphorus concentration is a qualitative judgement which requires a standard for judgement. A dense macrophyte growth may be valueless to a drinking water supply, but may severely hinder a boater's recreation. Hypolimnetic anoxia may be of no interest to a swimmer but may signal the end of lake trout for a fisherman. In short, condition is "valueless" until value is placed on it by an observer, and that value will change depending on who is doing the viewing.

A water quality evaluation requires that the lake condition be viewed by people (i.e., society). People do not just look at a lake; they view it though the filter of their collective experience or use of a lake. This experience or use together with collective expectations for the lake is the subjective judgement that produces "lake quality." The concept of "designated use" is derived from this idea.

Quality may be based not only on use, but on region. Smeltzer and Heiskary (1990) found that volunteer monitors in agricultural regions of Minnesota had very different perceptions of what transparency is related to "excellent" water quality than did monitors in forested northern Minnesota or Vermont.

EPA ecoregional criteria is the setting of goals or set points for nutrient concentration approximating the natural ambient state of the water. States and Tribes also set nutrient criteria based on this value as well as such additional quality attributes such as use or attainability. These criteria may vary according to the designated use, but should not be less stringent than the ecoregional use criteria unless scientifically justifiable. The role of (designated) usage is described further in Chapter 7.

CHAPTER 3

Preliminary Steps for Criteria Development

A. Defining the Resource of Concern

Defining the resource of concern begins the overall process of establishing nutrient criteria. Resources of concern here are lakes and reservoirs, and managers must decide which water bodies are to be included in the population to which criteria will be relevant and applicable. Many states define jurisdictional lakes ("waters of the state") as those above a size threshold. For example, the inclusion of farm ponds and other similar small ponds can potentially result in an inordinately large population of lakes that would be required to be considered during the criteria establishing process. These practical considerations often make it desirable to eliminate small waterbodies from the resource population.

States may have already established a regulatory size threshold which specifies what should be considered a lake from the state management perspective. For example, the Florida Department of Environmental Protection routinely samples only lakes larger than 10 acres, because there are more than 7,000 lakes of 10 acres or more in Florida (Huber et al., 1982) and lakes under 10 acres are thought to number 10,000 or more. Florida surface water quality criteria and standards apply to all lakes not wholly owned by a single person other than the state (Florida Amended Code, 62-340). States are encouraged to determine if the established threshold is appropriate for the nutrient criteria setting procedure described in this document and adjust it, as necessary. If states have not set size limitations that define a lake, state water resource agencies should evaluate the lake resources in the state to determine appropriate size limitations. The goal of such an exercise is to eliminate small water bodies that, because of their size (and resulting hydrology) or uses (e.g., small agricultural impoundments) do not accurately represent typical lake conditions or do not exhibit expected responses to stressors.

Another approach to defining lake resources that can be used in combination with a size limitation would be to only include public lakes in the resource population. Depending on state legal authority, privately owned lakes may not fall under state jurisdiction for management. The elimination of lakes for which a state has no regulatory oversight better defines the resource in terms of accessibility, assessment, and management purposes.

For the purpose of this document, lakes are defined as natural and artificial impoundments with a surface area of greater than 10 acres and a mean water residence time of fourteen or more days. “Man-made-lakes” (i.e., artificial lakes) with the same characteristics may be viewed as part of the same system. Reservoirs are man-made lakes for which the primary purpose of the impoundment is other than recreation (e.g., boating, swimming) or fishing, and the water retention time, and waterbody depth and volume vary widely. Hydroelectric power generation, drinking water supply, and flood control are examples of typical uses of reservoirs.

Impoundments on rivers, especially ones on larger rivers, also require specific definition. Impoundments behind low-head dams for navigation, as on the Ohio and Mississippi Rivers, are hardly lake-like in their characteristics; in fact, they are called “navigational pools”. At what point does a pool on a river become a lake? Limnologists generally consider lake-like characteristics to increase with water mean residence time. Many studies suggest that phytoplankton do not accumulate at retention times less than 7 days (e.g., Kimmel et al., 1990).

These definitions are provided for the purpose of illustration and consistency. States with legal definitions of their lakes or reservoirs should obviously adhere to their own terms and interpret this guidance accordingly.

B. Classification

1. Geographic Divisions

The establishment of single, national nutrient criteria for lakes is not a realistic goal due to the significant variability of waterbodies that exists across the country in a variety of climates, geographic locations, and ecosystems. On a national basis, individual lakes and reservoirs are affected by varying degrees of development, and user perceptions of water quality can differ even over small distances. As a result, the nutrient criteria development process discussed in this document is based on an approach that acknowledges geographic differences in lakes across the country and within states and which uses a classification system to clarify those differences. The initial classification scheme used in this manual is the ecoregion approach (Omernick, 1987, 1988, 1995). However, there are many viable regionalization techniques for delineating geographic regions.

The process of identifying geographic divisions (i.e., regionalization) is part of a hierarchical classification procedure with the purpose of grouping similar lakes together (i.e., to prevent comparison of unlike lakes). Classifying lakes reduces the variability of lake-related measures (e.g., physical, biological, or water quality variables) within classes and maximizes the variability among classes. Classification invariably involves professional judgement to arrive at a workable system that separates clearly different ecosystems, yet does not consider each lake a special case. The intent of classification is to identify groups of lakes that under ideal conditions would have comparable characteristics (e.g., biological, ecological, physical). To the extent possible, classification should be restricted to those characteristics of lakes that are intrinsic, or natural, and are not the result of human activities. This includes size, maximum or mean depth, detention time, and shape.

The general approach to the regionalization process is to establish divisions at the broadest level and then to continue to stratify to a reasonable point. In this section, a regionalization system for the national scale is presented to provide a framework for developing nutrient criteria. EPA encourages states to identify state-specific subregions, if appropriate, and to use the national regionalization scheme discussed below as the basis for further subdivisions.

(a) National Nutrient Ecoregions

Ecoregions are a mapped classification system of ecological regions, that is, regions with assumed relative homogeneity of ecological characteristics (Omernik 1987). The U.S. EPA has developed maps of ecoregions of the United States, at various levels of resolution and aggregation (Omernik 1987, 1997). The most commonly used is the Level III ecoregions, consisting of 79 ecoregions in the conterminous United States. Ecoregions were based on interpretations of the spatial coincidence in all geographic phenomena that cause or reflect differences in ecosystem patterns. These phenomena include geology, physiography, vegetation, climate, soils, land use, wildlife, and hydrology. The relative importance of each characteristic varies from one ecoregion to another regardless of the hierarchical level.

For the national nutrient strategy, a map of aggregations of the Level III ecoregions was developed to define broad areas, within which there are general similarities in the quality and types of ecosystems as well as in natural and anthropogenic characteristics that affect nutrients **(see Figure 1.1)**. The regions are intended to provide a spatial framework for the general guidance and reporting for the national nutrient strategy.

These nutrient regions, and their component Level III ecoregions, are described more fully in Appendix A. The nutrient regions delineated in Figure 1.1 are not intended to be homogeneous. They are aggregations of ecoregions where expectations within a nutrient region are more similar than expectations among nutrient regions. Some regions may be characterized by relative homogeneity; yet other regions may be characterized by extreme heterogeneity. An example of a heterogeneous region is Region XII, the Southern Coastal Plain, which has lakes ranging from ultra-oligotrophic lakes in sandy ridges and hills to highly eutrophic solution lakes in areas with phosphatic soils (Griffith et al., 1997). By comparison, Region VI, the Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains, is more homogeneous and is expected to be dominated by mesotrophic to eutrophic lakes, owing to the fertile plains soils and extensive agriculture. Region VIII, the Nutrient Poor Largely Glaciated Upper Midwest and Northeast, is dominated by oligotrophic lakes, but also has small subregions with higher nutrient concentrations and mesotrophic lakes (Omernik et al., 1988; Rohm et al., 1995).

The nutrient regions can form the basis for initial development of nutrient criteria. Expectations can be developed for nutrient concentrations and loadings in each of the regions, and criteria derived from those expectations.

(b) Further Subregionalization

The heterogeneity within many of the nutrient regions will require further subregionalization or subclassification to implement nutrient criteria. Using the ecoregion concept as a basis, EPA has developed lake regions based on phosphorus and other considerations for 3 areas: the Upper Midwest, comprising parts of nutrient regions VI, VII and VIII in Minnesota, Wisconsin and Michigan (Omernik et al., 1988); the Northeast, comprising nutrient regions VII, VIII, and XIV ranging from northern Pennsylvania and New Jersey through New York and the New England states (Rohm et al., 1995); and Florida, comprising a small part of nutrient region IX, most of Region XII, and all of Region XIII (Griffith et al., 1997). The regionalizations for the Upper Midwest and Northeast are based on total phosphorus concentration, due to the dominance of phosphorus as the principal limiting nutrient in cool temperate lakes of the world (e.g., Schindler, 1978). The regionalization for Florida also takes into account total nitrogen concentration, algal chlorophyll, pH, color, Secchi depth, lake origin and lake hydrology. In warm temperate and subtropical lakes, nitrogen concentration is often the principal limiting nutrient (e.g., Shannon and Brezonik 1972; Carlson 1992).

These subregionalizations were developed from data on nutrient concentrations of sampled lakes in the regions, soils, and land use (Omernik et al. 1988; Rohm et al. 1995; Griffith et al. 1997). The distributions of nutrient concentrations of each subregion were characterized (usually with a histogram) if data were available. In subregions where no data were available, the nutrient distributions were estimated based on similarity of soils and land use to regions where data were sufficient to characterize. It is expected that as more data are developed through the Nutrient Criteria Program, that more nutrient ecoregions will be similarly subdivided.

2. Non-Geographic Classifications

Many lake classifications have been proposed in addition to trophic state and geography (Hutchinson 1957). Lake classification can be further complicated by natural or human induced conditions that can intrinsically affect the state of a lake and, therefore, how it can be classified. For example, acidic lakes (whether naturally acidic or from acid deposition) are commonly found in the Adirondacks of New York and in sand ridges of Florida. High mineral turbidity is found in reservoirs where streams have a high load of suspended fine sediment, typically in arid and semiarid regions.

Although lake types can be explained to greater or lesser extent on geographic considerations, it may be more convenient to classify lakes by non-geographic variables, which may yield more explanatory power than geographic locations. Discussed below are certain factors that potentially can affect the classification process, but which generally fit the geographic-oriented focus of the above geographic approaches (e.g., ecoregional, water-quality characteristic).

(a) Lake Origin

Hutchinson (1957) lists 76 different types of lakes, based solely on their origins. Although we often think of lakes simply as a hole in the ground with water in it, the number of different lake types should make us pause to consider how many ways that the origin shapes the area, the volume, and the shape of the lake basin. Lakes of volcanic origin will probably be very deep, with virtually no littoral zone and small watersheds. Crater Lake (Lake Type 10) for example is extremely deep, very clear, and having only the crater walls for a watershed. However it is very susceptible to nutrients introduced by septic leakage because of the very small water load.

Lakes of tectonic origin such as those in faults (Lake Type 9; e.g., Lake Baikal) might behave similarly. Other lakes may be extremely shallow such as oxbow lakes (Type 55) or maritime coastal lakes (Type 64). In these instances, there may be extensive shallow areas and considerable interaction of the sediments with the overlying water. The shape of the basin and watershed help determine the controlling variables of surface area, depth, volume and retention time. Rather than discrete classes (e.g., large lakes, small lakes) it may be more effective to treat the shape-related variables as a continuous characteristic. This is discussed in more detail in Section 3.

(b) Reservoirs

Reservoirs and impoundments, created by the damming of a stream, have characteristics of both rivers and lakes (Thornton, 1990). Reservoirs are divided into 3 zones (riverine, transitional, lacustrine), which correspond to flowing, river-like conditions; transition to lake conditions; and nonflowing, lake-like conditions near the dam, respectively. With expected life spans ranging from several decades to a century or more, reservoirs are more ephemeral than most natural lakes and have several physical characteristics unique to reservoirs and natural reservoirs formed by natural dams (e.g., beaver dams, terminal moraines, landslides).

Reservoirs vary widely in physical characteristics of shape, size, and hydrology. They can range from small, shallow impoundments (farm ponds), to deep storage reservoirs, to “run of the river” flow-through navigational pools and hydroelectric reservoirs on large rivers. They are built and managed for widely different purposes, including flood control, navigation, municipal or agricultural water storage, hydroelectric generation, gamefish production, and others. Many dams are constructed to allow discharge from the surface, mid-depth, or deep water, depending on management goals. This must be know prior to understanding the limnology of the reservoir. The management practices in turn affect physical, chemical, and biological characteristics of the reservoir.

Although no “natural” reservoir reference conditions exist, the operational determination of nutrient reference conditions for reservoirs is the same as for natural lakes. Reservoirs can be classified according to hydrology, morphometry, management objectives and other factors. Age of the reservoir may be important in determining expectations. Several considerations affect the classification of reservoirs as opposed to natural lakes:

- *Distribution*. Reservoirs and impoundments are most numerous in regions with few or no natural lakes. The nonglaciated parts of North America have the largest number of reservoirs (except Florida, which is a Karst landscape).
- *Form*. The form or shape of a basin and watershed may be the most important distinction between natural and artificial lakes. Shape substantially influences hydrology and water quality of impoundments. Large reservoirs are drowned river valleys and tend to be long and deep with numerous embayments of tributary streams. The watersheds of reservoirs are relatively much larger than those of natural lakes and contribute relatively greater sediment loads.
- *Longitudinal gradient*. Reservoirs have characteristics typical of both lakes and streams. They are stream-like at the head where major tributaries enter, and are more lake-like near the dam (Thornton 1990).
- *Turbidity and loading*. Many reservoirs are more turbid than natural lakes, and they receive more nutrients and organic matter from their tributary streams than do natural lakes. This is partly related to the greater relative size of reservoir watersheds.
- *Management*. Reservoirs were built and are managed for specific purposes: hydropower, water supply, and flood control. Fisheries and other uses are usually secondary. Management might include extreme water level fluctuations and discharge depth controls; effects not present in most natural lakes.

Most of the differences between reservoirs and natural lakes are resolved in the classification of the lake resource. The needs for which they were designed dictate many of the attributes of artificial waterbodies. Operational strategies can influence reservoir characteristics and resultant water quality (Kennedy and Walker, 1990; Kennedy et al., 1985). The release of water from deep in the water column (hypolimnetic release) increases heat gain and the dissipation of materials accumulated in bottom waters (Martin and Arneson, 1978; Wright, 1967). Surface releases dissipate heat and retain materials. These and other operational differences can provide a basis for grouping reservoirs within and among regions.

Therefore, reservoirs should be considered separately from natural lakes because of their different origins, morphometry, and hydrodynamics. Reservoir studies have shown that the nutrient loading paradigm fits with some modifications (Canfield and Bachmann, 1981). The rapid flushing rates and longitudinal gradients that typify most main-stem reservoirs require modifications of the models to account for down-reservoir changes in water from sedimentation and dilution, with passage through the system. Also, nutrient loading models that work well to explain in-lake concentrations in natural lakes overestimate values measured in reservoirs (Jones and Bachmann, 1978); for a given external load, reservoirs appeared to have lower in-lake phosphorus values than natural lakes. Differences between reservoirs and natural lakes were thought to be tied to the fact that reservoirs are constructed in erosional topography and receive much larger inputs of suspended solids than most natural lakes. With greater sediment input it follows that reservoirs would have greater sedimentation rates and more phosphorus would be lost from the water column as compared to natural lakes.

Another factor contributing to apparent differences in water column nutrient values is that reservoirs typically have large watersheds (Canfield and Bachmann, 1981). As a result, inflow enters from a parent river that, during stratified periods, forms a density flow below the warm surface water but above the colder bottom waters (tropholytic zone) that does not mix or contribute nutrients to the photic zone (Ford, 1990). Timing of nutrient laden inflows relative to seasonal stratification can be as important as their volume in controlling nutrient values within the water column. Waterbodies with density currents do not always show a response to external inputs. In these waterbodies loading models need to take into account the effects of inflow timing and flow stratification. The relative timing of flow and stratification will vary from year to year and could make nutrient content of the surface layer unpredictable except as a long term average.

(c) Water Chemistry (non-nutrient)

Intrinsic water chemistry (not including nutrients) can be used to classify lakes. The most likely variables include acid-base chemistry (any of alkalinity, pH, conductivity), and dissolved organic matter (DOC or water color). Color and pH are cheaply and easily measured in the field, and are therefore highly cost-effective.

Lake water chemistry is largely determined by the hydrologic pathways of water entering the lake, and the material the water contacts along its path. Lakes with large inputs of water from shallow groundwater, including wetlands, tend to be stained yellow or brown with dissolved humic compounds. Water entering a lake as deeper groundwater tends to be clear, but will contain the cations of the soils and aquifer. Highly colored lakes have been termed dystrophic because they were often observed to have low productivity in spite of moderate to high nutrient concentrations (Wetzel 1975). Colored water not only reduces light penetration, but the dissolved organic matter can also chelate nutrients, making them unavailable for algal uptake. Water color is thus an important classification variable (or covariate; see below) for lake nutrient criteria.

Alkalinity also influences lake productivity, in part because alkaline soils are richer in several nutrients (especially phosphorus and potassium) than acid soils, and because the nutrients are more readily available to plants. The world’s most productive agricultural regions are in alkaline soils. Alkalinity, or its related variables pH and conductivity, are important classification variables for nutrient criteria.

As an example, Florida lakes were characterized as acidic or alkaline; and colored or clear, resulting in 4 lake types (Shannon and Brezonik, 1972). Although pH and color are continuous variables, it was more convenient to cluster the Florida lakes into four groups because response to nutrient enrichment and macroinvertebrate communities also clustered according to the four groups (Gerritsen et al., 1999).

(d) Non-algal Turbidity (Suspended Sediments)

High concentrations of non-algal suspended materials are prevalent in lakes in many regions of the world and can inhibit growth of phytoplankton causing light limitation. Non-algal turbidity from suspended clay or organic matter is also strongly regional, depending on soil characteristics, vegetation, and hydrology. It is a prominent characteristic of many impoundments in Midwestern and arid western states. Non-algal turbidity can produce low algal chlorophyll:nutrient ratios and cause a lack of relationship between chlorophyll and phosphorus in some regions (Jones and Novak, 1981; Hoyer and Jones, 1983; Carlson, 1991; Jones and Knowlton, 1993). Light limitation of algal biomass in the mixed zone of lakes occurs when irradiance absorbed by the phytoplankton community is less than is required for net growth of biomass over time. Light limitation extended over periods of a week or longer is common in deep or turbid lakes during winter because of low incident light but is less common in summer when incoming irradiance is maximal and mixing depth is reduced by thermal stratification.

The Carlson TSI (1977) can be used to identify certain conditions in the lake or reservoir in which algal biomass is not related to phosphorus or nitrogen. When more than one of the three variables are measured, it is probable that different index values will be obtained. Because the relationships between the variables was originally derived from regression relationships and the correlations were not perfect, some variability between the index values is to be expected. However, in some situations the variation is not random, and factors interfering with the empirical relationship can be identified. These deviations of the total phosphorus or the Secchi depth index from the chlorophyll index can be used to identify errors in collection or analysis of real deviations from the “standard” expected values (Carlson, 1980b). Some possible interpretations of deviations of the index values are given in **Table 3.1** (Carlson, 1983; 1992).

In turbid lakes, it is common to see a close relationship between the total phosphorus TSI and the Secchi depth TSI, while the chlorophyll index falls 10 or 20 units below the others. Clay particles contain phosphorus, and, therefore, lakes with heavy clay turbidity will have the phosphorus correlated with the clay turbidity while the algae may neither utilize all the phosphorus nor contribute significantly to the light attenuation. This relationship of the variables does not necessarily mean that the algae is limited by light, only that the measured phosphorus is not all being utilized by the algae.

3. Covariates

Several of the above factors have strong influences on lake trophic state, and may be expected to vary widely within nutrient regions. Whether a given factor needs to be considered separately in lake classification within regions depends on its variability in the region and its regional relevance in affecting trophic state. Additional classification factors may be treated as additional classes (e.g., as classes of large and small lakes), or as continuous covariates (e.g., a regression model to predict natural trophic state of lakes according to lake size). State and regional experts can use their knowledge of lake characteristics to determine if any of the modifying factors should be considered as part of a state level classification scheme.

Table 3.1: Conditions Associated with Various Trophic State Index Variable Relationships

Relationship Between TSI Variables	Conditions
TSI (CHL) = TSI(CHL) = TSI(SD)	Algae dominate light attenuation
TSI(CHL) > TSI(SD)	Large particulates, such as Aphanizomenon flakes, dominate
TSI(TP) = TSI(SD) > TSI(CHL)	Non-algal particulates or color dominate light attenuation
TSI(SD) = TSI(CHL) • TSI(TP)	Phosphorus limits algal biomass (TN/TP ratio greater than 33:1)
TSI(TP) > TSI(CHL) = TSI(SD)	Zooplankton grazing, nitrogen, or some factor other than phosphorus limits algal biomass

Lake morphometry and lake hydrology affect trophic state through the influence of water movement, retention time, and stratification. In-lake phosphorus dynamics in mixed and stratified lakes can complicate the relation between external loading and measurements of lake trophic state making model-based predictions uncertain in some cases. In mixed lakes phosphorus has been shown to increase during the spring to summer period (Riley and Prepas, 1985), presumably because of recycling due to mixing of the water column and internal loading from the sediments (Osgood, 1988; Welch and Cooke, 1995). In contrast, it is typical for phosphorus to decrease somewhat in stratified lakes because of sedimentation processes with the metalimnion acting as a barrier to upward transport into the photic zone.

Shallow lakes can efficiently cycle phosphorus and, under favorable light conditions, convert phosphorus into phytoplankton biomass (Nixdorf and Deneke, 1997). As a consequence of these internal loading mechanisms, shallow lakes do not always readily respond to reductions in external nutrient loading. Among large stratified lakes there is evidence that the efficiency of nutrient recycling increases with lake size; mixed layers in large lakes are more turbulent and thicker than in small lakes, and these processes increase the probability of nutrient regeneration within the mixed layer rather than loss to the sediments. The response to greater nutrient regeneration is greater phytoplankton photosynthesis (Fee et al., 1994). These findings suggest that external nutrient loads should be converted into biological production more efficiently in stratified lakes than in small lakes.

Water residence time can have a significant effect on the amount of algae in the water. The water must remain in the basin for a period longer than the doubling time of the algae or the algae will “wash out” of the basin. This means that for faster growing algae such as *Chlorella*, the water residence time would have to be at least two days. For slower growing species, the residence times would have to be much longer. In short residence time reservoirs, the algae would not necessarily reach densities in which nutrients were limiting to their growth. However, residence time may vary seasonally and there may be times when the algae do become nutrient limited. Another consideration would be that in short residence time situations, attached plants (both macrophytes and attached algae) may proliferate, and criteria would have to be set in reference to attached rather than planktonic forms.

Any continuous variable, such as pH, color, lake depth, lake area, can be treated as a covariate in a classification. Often, it may be more convenient to treat them as discrete classes (large and small; acid and alkaline). Whether to treat an important classification variable as discrete classes or as a continuous covariate may depend on the size of the database, the distribution of lakes across the gradient, and whether the trophic response to the gradient is linear. For example, a uniform or unimodal distribution across a gradient would suggest treating the variable as a covariate (e.g., lake surface area), while a bimodal distribution would suggest dividing into classes (e.g., pH classes of acidic and non-acidic lakes). If a relationship is found between measures of lake size or hydrology and trophic state, then additional classes reflecting these factors, or treating them as a covariate, must be considered. Since relationships with morphometric variables are often linear, the covariate approach is usually preferred for those variables (area, depth, retention time). Conversely, water chemistry variables (pH, color, hardness) may cluster naturally due to geology, soils and vegetation, so the class approach may be preferred for those variables.

CASE STUDY: ECOREGIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF MINNESOTA LAKES

Minnesota has over 12,000 lakes spread across diverse geographic areas. Previous studies had shown distinct regional patterns in lake productivity associated with regional differences in geology, vegetation, hydrology and land use (Heiskary and Wilson, 1989). Minnesota contains seven ecoregions (Omernik, 1987), and four of the ecoregions contain 98 percent of the lakes. These four ecoregions are the Northern Lakes and Forest (NLF), North Central Hardwood Forest (NCHF), Northern Glaciated Plains (NGP), and Western Corn Belt Plains (WCBP) (Figure 4-1). Minnesota uses these ecoregions as the framework for analyzing data, developing monitoring strategies, assessing use patterns, and developing phosphorus goals and criteria for lakes (Heiskary, 1989).

The Minnesota Pollution Control Agency (MPCA) and several other groups collected data on chlorophyll *a* concentrations and several water quality parameters (total phosphorus, total nitrogen, and Secchi transparency) in 90 reference lakes between 1985 and 1987. Secchi transparency data were collected mostly by volunteer participants in the Citizen Lake Monitoring Program. Reference lakes were chosen to represent minimally impacted sites within each ecoregion. Criteria used in selecting reference lakes included maximum depth, surface area, fishery classification, and recommendations from the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources (Heiskary and Wilson, 1989). Lake morphometry had previously been examined. In addition to the reference lake data base, MPCA examined a statewide data base containing data collected by these same groups on approximately 1,400 lakes form 1977 to 1987.

Differences in morphology, chlorophyll *a* concentrations, total phosphorus, total nitrogen, and Secchi transparency were found among lakes in the four ecoregions in both studies. Lakes in the two forested ecoregions (NLF and NCHF) are deeper (median maximum depth of 11 meters) with slightly smaller surface areas (40 to 280 ha) than those in the plains ecoregions (NGP and WCBP). Lakes in the two plains ecoregions were typically shallow (median maximum depth of 3 meters) with larger surface areas (60 to 300 hectares).

Box-and-whisker plots for chlorophyll a and water quality measurements in the reference lake study paralleled the morphological differences seen among the ecoregions (Heiskary and Wilson, 1989). The two plains ecoregions had significantly higher chlorophyll *a* levels than either of the two forested ecoregions. Results of the statewide data base analysis showed these same trends. The results of these two data base analyses support the use of ecoregions in developing frameworks for data analysis, monitoring strategies, assessing use patterns, and developing phosphorus goals and criteria for lakes.

CHAPTER 4

Establishing an Appropriate Database

A. Introduction

The development of nationwide, regional nutrient criteria requires the availability of an extensive amount of data from across the county for evaluation. Data may come from existing sources or can be collected from new sampling programs. Nutrient-related data for lakes and reservoirs, collected by various agencies for many different purposes, exist in various data bases and have the potential to provide the basis for the development of nutrient criteria on a regional level. This chapter presents an overview of existing data bases and presents a general discussion concerning the evaluation of such data in terms of its use in the nutrient criteria development process. The chapter also provides a description of the process undertaken by USEPA to use existing data from STORET and perhaps other existing data sets (e.g., USGS NAWQA) to generate preliminary nutrient criteria on an ecoregional level. In addition to discussing the use of existing data, the chapter discusses new data collection including consideration of sampling design and the types of monitoring to be considered as part of data collection activities. The chapter ends with a general discussion of data management issues that are integral in the overall discussion of data storage and accessibility.

B. Evaluating Existing Data

In many states, historical data on lakes are extensive and may be sufficient to identify lake classes, reference lakes, and establish interim criteria. With societal interest in cultural eutrophication during the 1970s, programs such as EPA's Clean Lakes Program, and citizen's organizations such as LakeWatch, lakes have been extensively monitored and studied. Many of the historic data are available, and may suffice for developing lake nutrient criteria. Although existing data may be sufficient, program managers should recognize that gathering, reducing, analyzing, and interpreting existing data sets can be costly and time-consuming.

Development of nutrient criteria using the reference site approach requires a database that can be used to characterize reference lakes and to characterize the biological response of lakes to nutrient enrichment. At a minimum, observations should include TN or Kjeldahl nitrogen (TKN), TP, chlorophyll *a*, and Secchi depth. For each lake in the database, there should be information or inference on the status of anthropogenic nutrient loading to the lake. At a minimum, this information would be informed best professional judgement on whether anthropogenic nutrient loading was negligible or substantial for a given lake. The judgement could be based on personal observation, discharge information, land use information, or historical information. Such information may not reside together with the water quality observation and may need to be found and obtained separately.

As mentioned above, the water quality data should be sufficient to characterize a lake. All lakes in the database should have been sampled the same way and should be characterized the same. At a minimum, lakes will have been sampled once during an index period that characterizes nutrient or trophic state (e.g., during spring overturn) and with sampling methods that are assumed to characterize the lake (e.g., pumped or composite sample of the entire water column). Some existing data sets may permit estimation of annual or growing season average nutrient concentrations.

Appropriate data analysis will be determined by the data set. The basic procedure is to consider each lake an independent sample unit and to estimate an annual characteristic value (annual average, median, minimum, maximum) of each water quality observation for each lake. These annual characteristic values are the information used to develop nutrient criteria and biological response of lakes to enrichment. This procedure assumes that lakes are independent, and that annual averages among years are independent. The investigators and the RTAGS should decide whether the independence assumptions are reasonable and whether any modifications should be made.

1. Potential Data Sources

Data bases could include water quality monitoring data from water quality agencies (often stored in STORET); national surveys such as the EPA Eastern Lakes Survey (Linthurst et al. 1986) or EMAP (Paulsen et al., 1991); limnological studies; and volunteer monitoring information.

- *STORET*

STORET is EPA's national data warehouse for water quality data. All state and federal water quality monitoring agencies are required to submit their data to STORET. STORET is huge, covering all 50 states since the 1970s; it includes lakes, streams, rivers, and estuaries; and includes physicochemical data and biological data. STORET has no quality control for accepting or rejecting data, but it does require extensive metadata (data descriptors) that show how data were collected and what analytical methods were used. All sampling sites are referenced by latitude and longitude, by the EPA Reach File 3, and by USGS Hydrologic Unit Codes. Extracting data from STORET requires familiarity with the system, and requires selection criteria (date ranges, location ranges, specified measured variables, collecting agency with known quality control) to keep from being overwhelmed with irrelevant data.

- *National Eutrophication Survey (NES)*

The National Eutrophication Survey was conducted by EPA in the early 1970s. Several hundred lakes were sampled and nutrient budgets were estimated. Lakes were selected for the survey because they received discharges from municipal sewage treatment or were requested by the States to be included. Because they are a broad but incomplete sample of lakes, they would not be appropriate for developing regional nutrient criteria. The NES data may be used for determining biological responses to enrichment and for developing site-specific criteria.

- *National Surface Water Survey (NSWS)*

The National Surface Water Survey was conducted by EPA in the mid 1980s under the National Acid Precipitation Assessment Program. Lakes were surveyed only in those regions where they were initially thought to be at risk to acid precipitation: New England, the Adirondacks, the mid-Atlantic highlands, the mid-Atlantic coastal plain, , the southeastern highlands (southern Appalachians and Ozark-Ouachitas, Florida, the upper Midwest, and the montane West. The NSWS sampled 2300 lakes from 4-2000 ha, thus, the smallest and largest lakes were not represented. The NSWS was a stratified random sample of lakes in the selected region; therefore, inferences can be made to the populations defined by the regions. Sampling was in the fall. Nutrients were measured, so the NSWS data could be used to help develop criteria.

- *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program (EMAP)*

EPA's Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program (EMAP) sampled lakes in New England and the Adirondacks in 1991, with a probability-based site selection procedure to obtain an unbiased sample (Paulsen et. al, 1991). The EMAP lake sample should include potential reference lakes as well as stressed lakes and could be used to identify reference lakes and characterize reference conditions.

- *Clean Lakes Program (CLP)*

The EPA Clean Lakes Program for restoring public lakes included a monitoring and assessment component. Lakes in this program were selected because they were perceived to have water quality impairment. Like the NES database, they are not likely to be suitable for setting regional nutrient criteria.

- *Volunteer Monitoring Programs*
    - Lake Watch
    - National Secchi Dip-in (Carlson et al. 1997)

Elements of these data bases could contribute to criteria development, but like the EMAP data, would need to be screened to identify reference and non-reference lakes.

- *State Monitoring Programs*

Most states monitor some subset of lakes and impoundments within their borders for eutrophication and nutrient variables. Several of the more extensive lake monitoring programs (e.g., Minnesota, Wisconsin, Maine, Florida) are profiled in this document as examples of using monitoring data to help develop nutrient criteria. The purpose of the survey should be assessed before using the data. See *representativeness* below.

- *U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (COE)*

The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (COE) is responsible for more than 750 reservoirs. Many have extensive monitoring data that could contribute to the development of nutrient criteria for reservoirs.

- *U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation (BuRec)*

The Bureau of Reclamation manages many irrigation and water supply reservoirs in the West and some of these may have data available from their operations.

- *Electric Utilities*

Many electric utilities own reservoirs for hydroelectric power generation, and are required to monitor the reservoirs' water quality. The largest of these, the Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA), has extensive chemical and biological monitoring data from most of its reservoirs from the early 1980s to the present.

2. Quality of Historic Data

The quality of older historic data sets is a recurrent problem because the data quality is often unknown. This is especially true of long-term repositories of data such as STORET and long-term state data bases, where objectives, methods, and investigators may have changed many times over the years. The most reliable data tend to be those collected by a single agency, using the same protocol, for a limited number of years. Supporting documentation should be examined to determine the consistency of sampling and analysis protocols.

When "mining" from large heterogeneous data repositories such as STORET, investigators must screen data for acceptance:

- *Location*

STORET data are georeferenced with latitude, longitude, and RF3 codes. These can be used to select specific locations, or specific USGS Hydrologic Units. In addition, STORET also often contains a site description. If selecting, say, all lake sites within a geographic region, it is also important to know the rationale and methods of site selection by the original investigators. Such information may be included in STORET metadata, if known.

- *Variables and analytical methods*

Thousands of variables are recorded in STORET records. Each separate analytical method yields a unique variable (called "parameter" in STORET); thus five ways of measuring total phosphorus results in 5 unique variables. Since methods differ in accuracy, precision, and detection limits, it is generally unwise to mix methods in the same analysis. If there is one method that the investigator judges to be best, then only observations using that particular method can be selected. Selection of a particular "best" method may result in too few observations, in which case it may be more fruitful to select the most frequent method in the data base. Some data may be missed because some methods may be synonymous, and there is an unknown component of error from incorrect data entry.

- *Laboratory QC*

Laboratory Quality Control data (blanks, spikes, replicates, known standards, etc.) are generally not reported in the larger data repositories. It is more cost-effective to accept or reject all data of the collecting agency or laboratory based on overall confidence of their QC. Overzealousness in eliminating lower quality data can be counterproductive, because the increase in variance caused by analytical laboratory error may be negligible compared to natural variability or sampling error, especially for nutrients and related indicators.

- *Collecting Agencies*

STORET data are identified by the agency that collected the data. Selecting only data from particular agencies with known, consistent collection and analytical methods, and known quality, will reduce variability due to unknown quality problems.

- *Time period*

Long-term records are critically important for establishing trends. In characterizing reference conditions for nutrient criteria, it is also important to determine if trends exist in the reference site data base. For example, since passage of the Clean Water Act and elimination of most discharges to lakes, many lakes have improved markedly. Other lakes, subject to increased nonpoint-source runoff, may have declined in overall quality.

- *Index period*

If nutrient and water quality variables were measured more than once per year, an index period for estimating average concentrations must be set. The index period may be the entire year, or spring or fall mixing (in regions where lakes stratify), or the summer growing season. The best index period is determined by investigators considering the characteristics of lakes of the region, the quality and quantity of data available, and estimates of temporal variability (if available).

- *Representativeness*

Data may have been collected for specific purposes, such as developing nutrient budgets for eutrophic lakes. Such data are unlikely to be representative of the region or lake type of interest. The investigator must ask whether the lakes in the database are representative of the population of lakes to be characterized. If not, can a subset of representative lakes be selected from the database? If a sufficient sample of representative lakes cannot be found that is large enough to characterize reference conditions, then a new survey will be necessary (see 4.C below).

3. Data Reduction

In order to facilitate data manipulation and calculations, it is highly recommended that historic and present-day data be transferred to a relational database. Relational databases are a powerful tool for data manipulation and initial data reduction (calculation of seasonal means, etc.). They allow selection of data by specific, multiple criteria (e.g., all observations Feb.-April in reference lakes of low alkalinity); calculation of means and totals by criteria; definition and redefinition of linkages among data components; etc.

Data reduction requires a clear idea of the analysis that will be attempted, and a clear definition of the sample unit for the analysis. For example, a sample unit might be defined as "a lake basin during February-April". For each variable measured, a mean value would then be estimated for each lake basin in each February-April index period on record. Analyses are then done with the observations (estimated means) for each sample unit, not with the raw data.

Steps in reducing the data include:

- Selecting the time period for analysis
- Selecting an index period to characterize lakes
- Selecting relevant chemical measures:
    - Quality of methods
    - Combining data from different methods
- Estimating values for analysis (mean, median, minimum, maximum) based on the reduction selected

C. New Data Collection

When existing and historical data do not exist or are inadequate for meeting desired objectives, the collection of new monitoring data may be the only remaining alternative. A well-designed monitoring program is essential for establishing nutrient criteria in lakes. Monitoring data are needed for a variety of purposes, from the initial classification of lakes to assessing the effectiveness of controls. This section presents a brief background presentation on statistical issues to consider in designing a monitoring program and provides recommendations for three types of monitoring associated with nutrient criteria. Guidance on how to use the data that are gathered during monitoring can be found in the Data Processing and Storage chapter.

Several manuals and statistics books already exist that provide information on sampling design. The following manuals specifically deal with the sampling of lakes and reservoirs:

- Carlson, R. and J. Simpson. 1996. *A coordinators guide to volunteer lake monitoring methods*. North American Lake Management Society. February 1996.
- Gaugush, R.F. 1986. *Statistical methods for reservoir water quality investigations*. Instruction Report E-86-2, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, Mississippi.
- Gaugush, R.F. 1987. *Sampling design for reservoir water quality investigations.* Instruction Report E-87-1, U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, Mississippi.
- Reckhow, K.H. 1979. *Quantitative techniques for the assessment of lake quality*. U.S. EPA Office of Water Planning and Standards. EPA-440/5-79-015.
- Reckhow, K.H. and S.C. Chapra. 1983. *Engineering approaches for lake management: Volume 1: Data Analysis and Empirical Modeling*. Butterworth Publishers (Ann Arbor Science).

1. Types of Monitoring Associated with Nutrient Criteria

Monitoring is a critical component of nutrient criteria development and implementation. Monitoring is necessary after criteria are developed to determine trends and efficacy of water quality management in lakes, and to improve the criteria with better information. If historical or existing data are not suitable for developing nutrient criteria, then a field survey is necessary to acquire the relevant data. Management of lakes not attaining their criteria also requires more intensive diagnostic surveys and monitoring, followed by long-term monitoring to determine if the management actions succeeded. Nutrient criteria are thus supported by three types of monitoring surveys; classification survey monitoring, diagnostic monitoring, and evaluation monitoring.

(a) Classification Surveys to Support Nutrient Criteria Development

The purpose of a classification survey is to gather data that can be used to classify lakes or reservoirs into groups (classes) or along gradients with unique expected trophic status and trophic responses to enrichment. Classification depends on acquiring a database of lakes covering a gradient from least altered (reference lakes) to most altered in the region. The goal of the classification survey process is to identify classes of lakes independent of cultural eutrophication; that is, classes that would be recognizable if human cultural eutrophication were absent or minimal. Since the objective is to develop nutrient criteria, each lake class identified should have a unique suite of trophic conditions, and a unique response to cultural eutrophication, that sets each class apart from the other classes. Classes need not be discrete categories of lakes: classification may also identify natural environmental gradients rather than categories.

Existing regional lake databases can potentially be sufficient for classification in many regions of the country, as has been done in Minnesota (Heiskary et al. 199_) and Florida (Griffiths et al. 1997). However, if adequate data do not exist, new data should be collected.

• *Parameters to survey*

Each of the water quality response parameters discussed in Chapter V (i.e., total phosphorus, total nitrogen, chlorophyll, Secchi depth, and dissolved oxygen) should be sampled during classification monitoring. In addition, classification also requires collecting information that helps explain observed patterns, including region (e.g., ecoregion or lake region); watershed size; lake water characteristics such as pH, conductivity, alkalinity, TSS, and color; watershed land use; and human population density.

• *Sampling frequency*

Since the objective of classification monitoring is to characterize a large population of lakes, a single determination per lake may be the most cost-effective (e.g., Linthurst et al. 1986). Multiple sample times (e.g., monthly) will yield a more precise estimate of annual average concentrations, but these must be weighed against the cost of sampling. For a given monitoring budget, it may be possible to sample 12 lakes one time for the same cost as sampling one lake 12 times. North temperate lakes are most effectively sampled during spring turnover, and subtropical lakes can be sampled during mid- to late summer for trophic state variables.

• *Sampling location*

Several alternatives are possible for sampling sites within lakes: single site (often the deepest point of the lake); multiple sites; spatially composite samples from multiple locations in a lake; or spatially composite samples from multiple sections of large lakes. Sampling location and frequency has consequences on the cost of the program and on the inferences that can be made from it. In general, composite samples are more cost-effective (information gained per dollar spent) than single sites or multiple locations.

In order to facilitate comparison, EPA recommends that the same spatial site location and discrete or compositing methods be used for both the classification survey and for routine maintenance monitoring. If increased power is required for certain kinds of maintenance monitoring (see below), then the frequency of sampling should be increased, but the methodology should not be changed. Diagnostic investigation has entirely different objectives, so consistency with the classification sampling and maintenance monitoring is not necessary.

A single site may be chosen as the midpoint of the central basin of the lake, and may be sufficient to classify lakes within a region. The location of this single site should remain constant from one year to the next so that comparisons can be made during routine monitoring.

Composite samples are taken from several sites in a lake or lake zone, and combined into a single sample for laboratory analysis. For example, water samples may be taken from four sites in a lake, and poured into a single clean bucket. The composite sample is subsampled for chlorophyll *a* and nutrients. Secchi depth, temperature, and DO are measured at each of the four sites. Care must be taken that the methods and volume sampled are the same at each site. Composite samples characterize the lake better than a single sample and they save laboratory costs. The principal disadvantage of composite samples is that they do not allow estimation of spatial variability within a lake.

Large riverine reservoirs have known gradients of nutrients and productivity from the river inflow to the dam (Kennedy and Walker, 1990), and a single site will not be appropriate. Large reservoirs would require a minimum of three sites, corresponding to the riverine, transitional, and lacustrine zones, respectively.

(b) Diagnostic Monitoring

Diagnostic monitoring provides more detailed information on a specific lake or reservoir and allows the manager to identify key problems and develop an appropriate management plan. Diagnostic monitoring is carried out before and during lake restoration efforts, such as took place in the Clean Lakes Program. This process is more fully described in Chapter 8.

(c) Evaluation Monitoring

The purpose of evaluation monitoring is to provide continuing information on the condition of a lake or reservoir. It can be used to determine if a lake is continuing to meet its nutrient criteria, or to assess the effectiveness of any management controls that have been implemented. The level of effort required for evaluation monitoring is considerably less than for diagnostic monitoring. Examples of evaluation monitoring include operational lake monitoring by many state water quality agencies, and volunteer monitoring efforts. Evaluation monitoring is discussed in more detail in Chapter 8.

Each of these monitoring objectives requires a statistically appropriate design to meet its objectives. The three types of monitoring are not entirely distinct, because data gathered for one purpose can be used for other purposes. Distinguishing between the different types of monitoring simply points out the need to identify ahead of time the purpose of the monitoring to maximize available resources.

2. Sampling Design

(a) Specifying the Population and Sample Unit

Sampling is statistically expressed as a sample from a population of objects. In some cases, the population is finite, countable, and easy to specify, e.g., all lakes in state XYZ, where each lake is a single member of the population. In other cases, the population is more difficult to specify and may be infinite, e.g., lake waters of state XYZ, where any location in any lake defines a potential member of the population (Thompson, 1992). Sampling units may be natural units (entire lakes, cobbles in a littoral zone), or they may be arbitrary (plot, quadrat, sampling gear area or volume) (Pielou 1977, 1979). Finite populations may be sampled with corresponding natural sample units, but often the sample unit (say, a lake) is too large to measure in its entirety, and it must be characterized with one or more second stage samples of the sampling gear (bottles, benthic grabs, quadrats, etc.)

Each sample unit is assumed to be independent of other sample units. The objective of sampling is to best characterize individual sample units in order to estimate some attributes (e.g., nutrient concentrations, DO) and their statistical parameters (e.g., mean, median, variance, percentiles) of a population of sample units. The objective of the analysis is to be able to say something (estimate) about the population. It is critical to distinguish between making an inference about a population of many lakes (e.g., “Reservoirs in the Blue Ridge are deep and oligotrophic”) versus an inference about a single lake (e.g., “Lake ABC has fewer fish species than unimpaired reference lakes”). These two kinds of inferences require different sampling designs: the first requires independent observations of many lakes and does not require repeated observations within sample units (pseudoreplication; Hurlbert 1984); while the second often does require repeated observations within a lake. Examples of sample units include:

- A point in a lake (may be characterized by single or multiple sample device deployments). The population would then be all points in the lake, an infinite population.
- A constant area, e.g., square meter, hectare. The population could be all square meters of lake surface area in a state or region.
- A lake or a definable subbasin of a lake as a single unit. Because lakes are most often discrete environments, this is likely to be the most common sample unit. The population would be all lakes in a state or region, a finite population.

(b) Specifying the Reporting Unit

It is also necessary to specify the units for which results will be reported. Usually, this is the population (e.g., all lakes), but often subpopulations (e.g., lakes within a given nutrient ecoregion) and even individual locations (e.g., lakes of special interest). In order to help develop the sampling plan, it is useful to create hypothetical statements of results in the way that they will be reported, for example:

- Status of a place: “The lake abc is degraded”
- Status of a region: “20% of the lake area in state XYZ has elevated trophic state, above reference expectations”; “20% of lakes in state XYZ have elevated trophic state”
- Trends at a place: “Nutrient concentrations in lake abc have decreased by 20% since 1980”
- Trends of a region: “Average lake trophic state in state XYZ has increased by 20% since 1980”; “Average trophic state index values in 20% of lakes of state XYZ have increased by 15% or more since 1980”
- Relationships among variables: “50% increase of P loading above natural

background is associated with decline in taxa richness of benthic macroinvertebrates, below reference expectations"; "Lakes receiving runoff from large impervious parking lots have 50% greater probability of elevated trophic state above reference conditions than lakes not receiving such runoff."

(c) Sources of Variability

Variability of measurements has many possible sources, and the intent of many sampling designs is to minimize the variability due to uncontrolled or random effects, and conversely to be able to characterize the variability caused by experimental or class effects. For example, lakes may be stratified by soil phosphorus content of the surrounding watersheds (e.g., Omernik 19__) so that lakes within a soil P class may be likely to have similar water column total P concentrations. The population of lakes is stratified so that observations (sample units) from the same stratum will be more similar to each other than to sample units in other strata.

Environmental measures vary across different scales of space and time, and sampling design must consider the scales of variation. In lakes, measurements of some variable such as total phosphorus or chlorophyll concentrations are taken at single points in space and time (center of the lake, 2m depth, 10 AM on 2 July). If the same measurement is taken at a different place (littoral zone, 1 m), or lake, or time (30 January), the measured value may be different. A third component of variability is the ability to accurately measure the quantity we are interested in, which can be affected by sampling gear, instrumentation, errors in proper adherence to field and laboratory protocols, and the choice of methods used in making determinations.

The basic rule of efficient sampling and measurement is to sample so as to minimize measurement errors, to maximize the components of variability that have influence on the central questions and reporting units, and to control other sources of variability that are not of interest, that is, to minimize their effects on the observations. In the example of chlorophyll concentrations, variability could be reduced by sampling each of several lakes in the deepest part, with a vertically integrated pump sample taken in early spring before stratification appears. Many lakes are sampled in order to examine and characterize the variability due to different lakes (the sampling unit). Each lake is sampled in the same way, in the same place, and in the same time frame to minimize variability due to location, depth, and season, which are not of interest in this particular study.

In the above example, chlorophyll concentrations vary with location within a lake, among lakes, and time of sampling (day, season, year). If the spatial and temporal components of variability within lakes are large (for example, measurements of chlorophyll concentrations typically vary more between spring and fall samples within a lake than they do among lakes), then it may be best to use either an index period sample or to estimate a composite from several determinations. For this reason, lake chlorophyll concentrations are often estimated as a growing season average, estimated from several determinations (e.g., monthly) during the growing season.

In statistical terminology, there is a distinction between sampling error and measurement error that has little to do with actual errors in measurement. Sampling error is the error attributable to selecting a certain sample unit (e.g., a lake or a location within a lake) that may not be representative of the population of sample units. Statistical measurement error is the ability of the investigator to accurately characterize the sampling unit. Thus, measurement error includes components of natural spatial and temporal variability within the sample unit as well as actual errors of omission or commission by the investigator. Measurement error is minimized with methodological standardization: selection of cost-effective, low variability sampling methods, proper training of personnel, and quality assurance procedures to minimize methodological errors. In analytical laboratory procedures, measurement error is estimated by duplicate determinations on some subset of samples (but not necessarily all). Similarly, in field investigations, some subset of sample units should be measured more than once to estimate measurement error.

Analysis of variance can be used to estimate measurement error. All multiple observations of a variable are used (from all lakes with multiple observations), and lakes are the primary effect variable. The root means square error (RMSE) of the ANOVA is the estimated variance of repeated observations within lakes. Note that a hypothesis test (F-test) is not of interest in this application; only the RMSE of the analysis.

Natural variability that is not of interest for the questions being asked, but which may affect the ability to address them, should be estimated with the RMSE method above. If the variance estimated from RMSE is unacceptably large (i.e., as large or larger than variance expected among sample units), then it is often necessary to alter the sampling protocol, usually by increasing sampling effort in some way, to further reduce the measurement error. Measurement error can be reduced by multiple observations at each sample unit, e.g.: multiple ponar casts at each sampling event; multiple observations in time during a growing season or index period, depth-integrated samples, or spatially integrated samples.

A less costly alternative to multiple measures in space is spatially composite determinations. In nutrient or chlorophyll determinations, a water column pumped sample, where the pump hose is lowered through the water column, is an example of a spatially composite determination. Spatial integration of an observation and compositing the material into a single sample is almost always more cost-effective than retaining separate, multiple observations. This is especially so for relatively costly laboratory analyses such as organic contaminants and benthic macroinvertebrates.

Statistical power is the ability of a given hypothesis test to detect an effect that actually exists, and must be considered when designing a sampling program (e.g., Peterman 1990; Fairweather 1991). The power of a test (1-b) is defined as the probability of correctly rejecting the null hypothesis (H0) when H0 is false (i.e. the probability of correctly finding a difference [impairment] when one exists). For a fixed confidence level (e.g., 90%), power can be increased by increasing the sample size or the number of replicates. To evaluate power and determine sampling effort, an ecologically meaningful amount of change in a variable must be set.

Optimizing sampling design requires consideration of tradeoffs among the measures used, the effect size that is considered meaningful, desired power, desired confidence, and resources available for the sampling program. Every study requires some level of repeated measurement of sampling units to estimate precision and measurement error. Repeated measurement at 10% or more of sites is common among many monitoring programs.

(d) Alternative Sampling Designs

Sampling design is the selection of a part of a population to observe the attributes of interest. In order to estimate the values of those attributes for the whole population. Classical sampling design makes assumptions about the variables of interest, in particular, it assumes that the values are fixed (but unknown) for each member of the population, until that member is observed (Thompson 1992). This assumption is perfectly reasonable for some variables, say, length, weight, and sex of members of an animal population, but it seems less reasonable for more dynamic variables such as nutrient concentrations, loadings, or chlorophyll concentrations of lakes. Designs that assume that the observed variables are themselves random variables are model-based designs, where prior knowledge or assumptions (a model) are used to select sample units.

- *Probability-based designs (random sampling)*

The most basic probability-based design is simple random sampling, where all possible sample units in the population have the same probability of being selected, that is, all possible combinations of n sample units have equal probability of selection from among the N units in the population. If the population N is finite and not excessively large, a list can be made of the N units, and a sample of n units is randomly selected from the list. This is termed list frame sampling. If the population is very large or infinite (such as locations in a lake), one can select a set of n random (x,y) coordinates for the sample.

All sample combinations are equally likely in simple random sampling, thus there is no assurance that the sample actually selected will be representative of the population. Other unbiased sampling designs that attempt to acquire a more representative sample include stratified, systematic, multistage, and adaptive designs. In stratified sampling, the population is subdivided or partitioned into strata, and each stratum is sampled separately. Partitioning is typically done so as to make each stratum more homogeneous than the overall population; for example, lakes could be stratified on ecoregion. Systematic sampling is the systematic selection of every kth unit of the population from one or more randomly selected starting units, and ensures that samples are not clumped in one region of the sample space. Multistage sampling requires selection of a sample of primary units, such as fields or hydrologic units, and then selection of secondary sample units such as plots or lakes within each primary unit in the first stage sample.

Estimation of statistical parameters requires weighting of the data with inclusion probabilities (the probability that a given unit of the population will be in the sample) specified in the sampling design. In simple random sampling, inclusion probabilities are by definition equal, and no corrections are necessary. Stratified sampling requires weighting by the inclusion probabilities of each stratum. Unbiased estimators have been developed for specific sampling designs, and can be found in sampling textbooks, such as Thompson (1992).

Model based designs

Use of probability-based sampling designs may miss relationships among variables (models), especially if there is a regression-type relationship between an explanatory and a response variable. As an example, elucidation of lake response to phosphorus loading with the Vollenweider model (Vollenweider, 1968) required a range of trophic states from ultra-oligotrophic to hyper-eutrophic. A simple random sample of lakes is not likely to capture the entire range (i.e., there would be a large cluster of mesotrophic lakes with few at high or low ends of the trophic scale), and the random sample may therefore be biased with respect to the model.

In model-based designs, sites are selected based on prior knowledge of auxiliary variables, such as estimated phosphorus loading, lake depth, elevation, etc. Often, these designs preclude an unbiased estimate of the population response variable (e.g., trophic state), unless the model can be demonstrated to be robust and predictive, in which case the population value is predicted from the model and from prior knowledge of the auxiliary (predictive) variables. Selection of unimpacted reference sites is an example of samples for a model (index development; response of index variables to measures of anthropogenic influence) which cannot later be used for unbiased estimation of the biological status of lakes. Ideally, it may be possible to specify a design that allows unbiased estimation of both population and model. Statisticians should be consulted in developing the sample design for a nutrient criteria and monitoring program.

D. Database Management

Critical to the success of any monitoring and criteria development program is comprehensive data management. With desktop computers increasingly capable of many of the same tasks as larger machines, with the continuing development of monitoring and assessment tools, and with accountability required of agencies that engage in water quality management, data management is a requirement that must be taken into account at the outset of a program or project. Storing data in filing cabinets or on spreadsheet files is no longer adequate.

The most powerful database architecture for storing large, complex data sets with multiple relationships among the data elements are relational databases. The hierarchical nature of a watershed and a survey and assessment program are reflected in a relational database: a watershed may contain many sampling sites; each site may be sampled multiple times during an investigation; and each sample may be tested for multiple constituents.

Non-relational databases consist of one or more “Flat Files”. Examples include text files and spreadsheet files. Flat file databases have a number of disadvantages, including: redundant data, difficulty to maintain, and slow access to data. Today there are a number of relational database management systems (RDMS), (i.e., software) and which include Oracle™, Sybase™, DB2™, Informix™, SQL server™, and ACCESS™.

In the simplest form a relational database begins as a collection of tables. Each table is linked to at least one other table through one or more key fields that act as links (i.e., relationships) between tables. Because tables are related, information can be retrieved from more than one table at a time. Tables generally contain data about a particular subject. For instance, data about a station that is sampled would be in one table while data about a sampling event would be in a separate but related table. Good database design includes reducing or eliminating duplicate information in tables and allowing future changes to the database tables as data needs change. Data should be easy to manage, aggregate, retrieve, and analyze. EPA has sponsored the development of two relational databases that are available for data management for nutrient criteria, Modernized STORET and EDAS.

1. Modernized STORET

EPA’s Office of Water has re-engineered the Office of Water’s primary marine and freshwater water quality and biological ambient monitoring and information systems, STORET, BIOS, and ODES. These databases contained over 250 million parametric observations from more than 850,000 sampling stations nationwide, collected by state and federal agencies. These systems are EPA’s primary sources of point and nonpoint source ambient water quality and biological monitoring data (EPA 1998).

The new system is designed to meet emerging data and information needs associated with watershed level environmental protection. The features of the new system were carefully engineered to meet the information requirements of federal, state, and local clients engaged in ambient water quality and biological monitoring activities of all kinds. The modernized STORET meets the following five requirements set by EPA:

- It must be easy to get data in and out of the system.
- The system must have menu access and browse capability.
- The system must support the storage of quality assurance and quality control (QA/QC) information on a project and result basis.
- The system must be flexible and able to change with the changing needs of its users.
- The system must provide a wide range of standard output forms, including Geographic Information System (GIS) environments.

STORET is both a data warehouse, which centrally stores all the data submitted by all agencies, as well as a distributed application for each state or agency to enter, store, and use its own data. It is a flexible and generalized data warehouse, both within-agency and nationwide, and as such does not have program-specific analysis capabilities built-in. It will be distributed to states upon completion.

2. EDAS

EDAS (Ecological Data Application System) is EPA's program-specific counterpart to STORET. EDAS was developed by EPA's Office of Water for manipulating data obtained from biological monitoring and assessment, and to assist states in developing biocriteria. It contains built-in data reduction and recalculation queries that are used in biological assessment. It is designed to enable the user to easily manage, aggregate, integrate, and analyze data to make informed decisions regarding the condition of a water resource. Biological assessment and monitoring programs require aggregation of raw biological data (lists and enumeration of taxa in a sample) into informative indicators. EDAS is designed to facilitate data analysis, particularly the calculation of biological metrics and indexes. Pre-designed queries that calculate a wide selection of biological metrics are included with EDAS. Future versions of EDAS will include the capability to upload data to, and download data from, the distributed version of modernized STORET. EDAS is not a final data warehouse, but is a program or project-specific customized data application for manipulating and processing data to meet users' requirements.

CHAPTER 5

Candidate Variables for Criteria Setting

A. Introduction

This chapter provides an overview of several trophic state variables that could be used to establish regional and water body-specific nutrient criteria for lakes and reservoirs. Trophic state variables are those variables that can be used to predict the trophic state of a water body. Trophic state variables include measures of nutrient concentration (e.g., total phosphorus, soluble reactive phosphorus, total nitrogen, total Kjeldahl nitrogen), plant (macrophyte or algal) biomass (e.g., organic carbon, chlorophyll a, Secchi depth), and watershed attributes (e.g., land use). All could be used for establishing criteria to address eutrophication concerns, but only a few are likely viable candidates for "early warning variables." Based on the "Proceedings of the National Nutrient Assessment Workshop" (EPA, 1996) the most likely trophic state candidates are total phosphorus, nitrogen, chlorophyll, Secchi transparency, and dissolved oxygen. In addition one watershed metric, land use and the associated phosphorus loading, was recommended as an early warning variable. These variables (metrics or indicators) will be briefly reviewed below.

The emphasis is on the open water portion of the ecosystem, and, as can be seen in **Table 5.1**, most of the commonly used biological variables are measures of the amount of organic material in the open water. As will be discussed later, there have only been few attempts to incorporate the littoral zone into the assessment of trophic state.

B. Nutrient Variables

1. *Phosphorus*

Phosphorus and nitrogen are essential nutrients necessary for the growth of plants in lakes. Of these two, phosphorus is most often considered to be the nutrient that regulates the production of algae in lakes and is most amenable to control. As such, it is often the variable of concern in regards to lake and reservoir eutrophication (Dinar et al., 1995). Together with algal chlorophyll *a* and Secchi disk transparency it is routinely used to estimate trophic status of lakes and reservoirs (See Chapter 2). Vollenweider (1968) and Sawyer (1947) categorized

Table 5.1: Variables Used To Estimate Trophic State in Lakes

Eutrophication-Related Variables	Apparent measure	Interference
Total Phosphorus	Nutrient concentration, Biomass	Non-biological, non-algal forms
Total Nitrogen	Nutrient concentration, Biomass	Non-biological, non-algal forms
Total Organic Carbon	Biomass	Non-algal suspended particulates, dissolved organics
Chlorophyll pigments	Algal Biomass, Photosynthetic capacity	Highly variable relationship between chlorophyll and algal carbon or biovolume
Suspended solids	Suspended Biomass	Non-algal particulates
Transparency	Suspended Algal Biomass	Non-algal particulates, dissolved color
Turbidity	Suspended Algal Biomass	Non-algal particulates
Direct Algal Counts / Biovolume	Algal biomass	None, but difficult to do easily
Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD)	Algal Biomass	Non-algal particulate and dissolved carbon

trophic status according to phosphorus concentration. Lakes with phosphorus concentrations below 10 µg/L were classified as oligotrophic, phosphorus concentrations between 10 and 20 µg/L were indicative of mesotrophic lakes, and eutrophic lakes had phosphorus concentrations exceeding 20 µg/L.

There are several forms of phosphorus which can be measured. Total phosphorus (TP) is a measure of all the forms of phosphorus, dissolved or particulate, that are found in a sample. It has been used throughout North America as a basis for setting trophic state criteria and in developing related models (NALMS, 1992). Total phosphorus concentrations in runoff or areal exports can be readily related to watershed land use as well (e.g. Reckhow and Simpson, 1980; Walker, 1985a) which makes it an excellent variable for addressing point and nonpoint source loads from the watershed.

Soluble reactive phosphorus (SRP) is a measure of the filterable (soluble, inorganic) fraction of phosphorus that is generally thought to be the form directly taken up by plant cells. For this reason it is usually in very low concentrations in lake water, unless phosphorus is not limiting to algal growth. It therefore serves more of an indicator of phosphorus limitation than of the trophic status of a lake. For a more complete discussion of the phosphorus forms and their biological significance see Carlson and Simpson (1996).

Total phosphorus concentrations will vary regionally, as demonstrated by the phosphorus mapping of Omernik (1988 and 1991) and the nutrient ecoregion map in this manual. For example, Minnesota TP concentrations vary substantially between the four ecoregions which contain 98 percent of the state's lakes (Heiskary and Wilson, 1989). Data from Minnesota's ecoregion reference lakes (representative, minimally-impacted lakes) demonstrate the variability between and within ecoregions (**Table 5.2**). The within-region variability can be accounted for in part by the depth of the lakes and mixing status. Table 5.2 reveals the distinct within-region differences in TP as related to lake mixing status. These differences are most pronounced in the North Central Hardwoods Forest lakes where median summer-mean TP concentrations in Class I dimictic lakes (mixed only in Spring and Fall) was 39 µg/L as compared to 89 µg/L for lakes that are continuously mixed (Class 3 Dimictic: sometimes erroneously called polymictic) lakes. It is likely that internal recycling of P becomes a significant portion of the P budget in the shallow eutrophic to hypereutrophic lakes in this ecoregion. Differences are quite pronounced in the Western Corn Belt Plains ecoregion as well, but the population of Class I dimictic lakes (based on available data) is quite small.

• *Analysis*

Phosphorus is relatively easy to measure using a colorimetric procedure (AHPA, 1995). To use the procedure all forms must be converted into orthophosphorus. SRP is a form which is defined as filterable and reactive with the molybdate reagent and generally reflects the amount of orthophosphorus plus some polyphosphates in the sample.

The distinction between particulate and "dissolved" is primarily a function of the filter used. Traditionally, a 0.45µ membrane filter is used, although glass fiber filters are used in some non-critical studies and micropore filters are used in critical studies. The particulate form of total phosphorus is converted to the ortho form with an acid hydrolysis step. The strength and nature of the acid can affect the amount of phosphorus converted. Usually sulfuric acid produces a conversion of organic forms without converting insoluble inorganic forms such as apatites.

Table 5.2: Median Total Phosphorus (µg/L) Concentrations As Affected By Mixing Status and Ecoregion In Minnesota *(Source: Heiskary and Wilson, 1988)*

	Mixing Status		
Ecoregion	**Class I Dimictic (Mixes only in Spring and Fall)**	**Intermittently Mixed**	**Continuously Mixed**
Northern Lakes and Forests	20	26	29
North Central Hardwood Forest	39	62	89
Western Corn Belt Plains	69	135	141
Number of lakes evaluated	257	87	199

2. Nitrogen

Nitrogen (N) is also an essential nutrient for algal growth. In contrast to P, control of nitrogen sources is more difficult, since is can be assimilated directly from the atmosphere by several types of organisms, including some species of the Cyanophyta, the blue-green algae. Nitrogen is also not as often limiting to plant growth—thus the focus on phosphorus in the majority of eutrophication-related efforts worldwide.

There are several forms of nitrogen to consider and its cycling is complex compared to phosphorus. The most common forms of concern in eutrophication evaluation, are nitrite, nitrate, ammonia, and organic N, as measured as total Kjeldahl N (TKN = organic N and ammonia _ N) minus ammonia). Total nitrogen (TN) is considered to be the sum of ammonia, nitrate, nitrite, and total Kjeldahl N. Typically nitrate, nitrite, and ammonia are at very low levels in lakes or reservoirs unless there are some relatively recent loadings of manure or fertilizer present in runoff from the watershed or if N is not limiting to algal growth. These forms are rapidly used by algae and aquatic plants or converted to other forms of N. The most useful measurement from a modeling standpoint is either TN or TKN. As with TP, TN concentrations vary regionally. Based on data from Minnesota TN concentrations in the shallow agricultural lakes are about twofold higher than concentrations in the deeper lakes in the forested region.

TN:TP ratios have been used as a basis for estimating which nutrient limits algal growth (e.g., Smith, 1982). Low TN:TP ratios (less than about 7:1) are indicative of N limitation, while ratios greater than 10:1 are increasingly indicative of phosphorus limitation. Based on data from Minnesota low ratios occur in some shallow hypereutrophic lakes in the Northern Glaciated Plains. However these low ratios are typically the result of very high TP loads from point or nonpoint sources in the watershed, rather than a shortage of nitrogen. Low TN:TP ratios are also found in lakes receiving significant amounts of sewage effluent.

- *Analysis*

Like phosphorus, nitrogen is divided into dissolved and particulate forms based on whether or not a particle passes through a filter. It would be advisable to use the same size filter for both phosphorus and nitrogen. Total nitrogen is similar in concept to total phosphorus, being the estimate of all nitrogen forms. Traditionally total N is calculated as the sum of the analyses of all nitrogen forms (NO_3 + NO_2+ NH_3 + TKN). Newer tests allow the conversion of all forms to NO_3 and are therefore direct equivalents to the total phosphorus test.

C. Biological Variables

1. Organic Carbon

The term, biomass, used so frequently in the ecological literature, refers to the weight of living material in a unit of measure (in a bacterium, in a cubic meter of water, or in an ecosystem). The bulk of that weight is in the form of organic carbon. Organic carbon production or productivity (the rate at which carbon is fixed in the aquatic ecosystem) has been the basis for numerous trophic state classification systems and for the definition of trophic state itself (Rodhe, 1969). The rates of production and decomposition of carbon compounds and the resulting biomass is at the heart of the eutrophication problem.

Despite the central character of carbon in eutrophication and ecosystem structure and function, carbon has not been explicitly measured or modeled in most standard eutrophication or nutrient/food-chain frameworks. This omission may have been, in large part, the result of the difficulty in measuring and interpreting organic carbon. Carbon analysis requires expensive, dedicated equipment, and each type of instrument produces slightly, but significantly, different estimates of carbon. Although the criticism of technique-specific results can probably be invoked for all of the variables discussed in this chapter, the expense of the equipment plus the wide variety of techniques available, has probably restricted the popularity of the routine analysis of carbon.

A second reason for the limited use of carbon in eutrophication-related studies is that chlorophyll pigments or direct measures of algae and macrophytes not only estimate plant biomass, but are also a direct indicator of the photosynthetic capacity to produce carbon. Chlorophyll also remains the only economic means to directly measure algal biomass free from significant interferences. However, it is well known that the chlorophyll-to-carbon ratio in phytoplankton varies by about a factor of 5 depending on ambient light and nutrient levels (Laws and Chalup, 1990). Consequently, measuring particulate organic carbon together with chlorophyll could better assess the amount of autochthonous carbon, particularly during bloom conditions.

• *Analysis*

There are several reasons for measuring organic carbon. Organic carbon can now be measured more easily and precisely than in the past. The use of carbon associated with algal metabolism and decomposition greatly facilitates the modeling of dissolved oxygen. Because many shallower, stratified systems experience hypolimnetic anoxia, models incorporating the carbon factor must be capable of accurately simulating this phenomenon. The direct modeling of organic carbon becomes especially important for systems where both allochthonous and autochthonous carbon sources are important. The use of eutrophication models as the basis for examining the transport and fate of toxic substances in lakes and impoundments requires that the amount and forms of organic carbon be specified. Such problems include toxic organics, metals and disinfection by-products. Finally, the state of the lake's bottom sediments is inextricably tied to the amount of carbon it receives from the overlying waters. This has ramifications for sediment oxygen and toxics.

2. Chlorophyll a

Chlorophyll is the major photosynthetic pigment in plants, both algae and macrophytes. As such it is the important variable when any estimate of the photosynthetic capacity of an ecosystem is desired. Chlorophyll is probably most often used as an estimator of algal biomass. The relationship between chlorophyll and total phosphorus is well established for lakes and reservoirs across much of the world. Despite the curious fact that the chlorophyll molecule itself contains no phosphorus while total phosphorus includes phosphorus dissolved in the water as well as in algal cells, relationships between total phosphorus and chlorophyll have dominated the empirical linkages between nutrients and the biological response of the algae in lakes. See Nurnberg (1996) for a recent review of these relationships.

Chlorophyll is also a preferred variable because there are lakes where TP is not the sole or primary limiter of algal production or biomass, e.g., lakes with high inorganic turbidity or high flushing rates. For example, a chlorophyll *a* goal of less than 30 µg/L was used for Lake Pepin, a run-of-the river reservoir on the Mississippi River between Minnesota and Wisconsin (Heiskary and Walker, 1995). In this reservoir inorganic turbidity and high flushing rates were the primary factors controlling algal production during above-average flows (about 20,000 cfs or greater), and chlorophyll a routinely remained below 30 µg/L at these flows. In contrast, as flows declined below about 20,000 cfs and residence time increased above 10-14 days, chlorophyll a increased as the influence of residence time and inorganic turbidity declined and the potential trophic status, as reflected by TP, was realized.

Because of the relationship between chlorophyll and phosphorus and its linkage to algae biomass, chlorophyll is often a major component of trophic state indices (Carlson, 1977) and water quality criteria. Oregon has set an endpoint of 10 µg/L for natural lakes that thermally stratify and 15 µg/L for natural lakes that do not thermally stratify (NALMS, 1992). Similarly, North Carolina uses a standard of 40 µg/L for warm waters and 15 µg/L for cold waters (NALMS, 1992). On the regional level, Raschke (1994) proposed a mean growing season limit of 15 µg/L for water supply impoundments in the southeastern United States and a value of 25 µg/L for water bodies primarily used for other purposes (e.g., viewing pleasure, safe swimming, fishing, boating).

In addition to the use of chlorophyll in classification, the chlorophyll interval frequency ("bloom frequency") can be predicted based on regression equations relating blooms to phosphorus developed by Walker, 1985b. These chlorophyll a intervals can be related to varying user perceptions of lake condition. The projected frequency of these extreme events, as a result of increased P loading can be readily understood by citizens and decision-makers (Heiskary and Walker, 1988).

• *Analysis*

The term "chlorophyll" really represents a family of molecules, chlorophyll *a*, *b*, *c*, and *d*. Chlorophyll *a*, because of its primary role in photosynthesis, is often the molecule of preference. Chlorophyll can be measured by several different methods. Most include steps of concentration of the algae, extraction of the chlorophyll with a solvent, and the measurement of the chlorophyll molecule. Unfortunately each of these techniques and choices of solvents, extraction times, and method of measuring the chlorophyll can produce widely different estimates of chlorophyll.

Chlorophyll *a* is the primary photosynthetic pigment and can be measured quite accurately with high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) analysis. The use of colorimetric techniques to measure chlorophyll *a* free from all forms of interference from either decomposition products (phaeophytin, phaeophorbides, or chlorophyllides) or other chlorophylls (chlorophylls *b* and *c*) is almost impossible. However, if the purpose of measuring chlorophyll is to estimate biomass rather than to know the absolute amount of photosynthetic pigment, the absolute accuracy obtained by HPLC is not necessary and the spectrophotometric techniques suffice. Most published relationships between total P and chlorophyll were made using these cruder spectrophotometric methods.

Since chlorophyll *a* cannot be measured without interference, Carlson and Simpson (1996) recommend using total chlorophyll pigments (the estimated chlorophyll at a single wavelength) rather than subjecting the sample to further manipulations to obtain an estimate of chlorophyll *a*. Fluorometry can also be used, especially if algal densities are very low and a very sensitive method of detection is needed.

Chlorophyll pigments degrade easily. Whole, non-filtered samples can apparently be kept for several days if left in the dark and in the refrigerator. Filtered samples should be kept dark and frozen. Filtered samples immersed in the solvent are apparently stable as long as they are kept dark. More information on chlorophyll preservation can be obtained from Carlson and Simpson (1996).

The important consideration for any of these techniques is that standardization of methodology is critical. Alteration of the extraction solvent, the extraction time, the type of filter used to concentrate the sample or of the concentration of acid used to convert chlorophyll into phaeophytin can all alter the concentration estimates. Therefore once a technique is chosen, for the sake of data consistency, the technique should only be altered with the knowledge that some of the previously collected data may not be compatible. This is one reason for using Total Chlorophyll; it requires the least analytical manipulation and therefore is the most conservative estimator of chlorophyll. Caution should also be observed when obtaining data from several sources that use different techniques which may produce discrepancies. This is particularly important when compiling several data sets to establish reference conditions for criteria development.

3. Secchi Disk Transparency

Secchi disk transparency, or Secchi depth, can cheaply provide a great deal of information on lake water quality and, together with TP and chlorophyll a, has become routinely used as a measure of lake trophic status (e.g., Carlson, 1977) It is routinely incorporated into citizen volunteer monitoring programs and in many states often provides the best basis for identifying trends in trophic status over time (Heiskary et al., 1994). Smeltzer et al. (1989) found Secchi transparency to be the best variable for identifying statistically significant trends in trophic status because of the large number of observations which can be gathered in a given season and the ability to gather numerous years of data at little or no cost as compared to TP and chlorophyll *a* which are typically monitored at a much reduced frequency and at a higher cost. As with other variables, Secchi depth may vary considerably in a given lake between and within seasons, and, therefore, it is desirable to have an “indicator season”. In many states the most reliable time frame for measuring Secchi transparency and estimating lake trophic status is summer, typically mid-June to mid-September. Thus this is the focus for much of the citizen and professional data gathering which takes place. Summer-mean measures of TP, chlorophyll *a*, and Secchi depth are then used to estimate lake trophic status.

User perception measurements may be taken in conjunction with Secchi readings. These user perceptions, especially when recorded by citizen volunteer monitors, can provide a good basis for associating designated uses and subjective perceptions of water quality with actual measurements of water quality. Citizen volunteer programs in Minnesota, Vermont, and New York routinely collect this information. Smeltzer and Heiskary (1990) found that user perceptions may vary between states and may vary further between regions within a given state. This type of information can be useful for criteria and goal setting purposes (see Vermont and Minnesota case studies in Appendix A).

• *Analysis*

The standard Secchi disk used in limnological investigations is a 20 cm diameter disk which is either all-white or having alternating black and white quadrants. Techniques vary as to how the depth should be measured and statistically significant differences between the techniques have been reported. Probably the best method is to lower the disk on the sunlight side of the boat in order to eliminate shading the disk or to have the disk disappear in a background darkened by the shadow of the boat. Glare on the water is eliminated by using a viewscope to view the disk.. The disk is lowered until it cannot be seen, the depth is noted, and then the disk is raised until it can be seen again. The average between the depth of disappearance and the depth of appearance is called the Secchi depth.

Considerable variations of this technique exist. Probably more programs lower the disk on the shady side of the boat and do not use a viewscope. The use of a viewscope or the side of lowering will give different results. The choice of an all-white or a black and white disk will also give different readings, especially in clearer waters. The point to be emphasized is that the particular method chosen may not be as important as consistency in the method of Secchi depth determination. Data consistency almost dictates that the technique cannot be changed without transforming part of the data record or losing historical information.

4. Dissolved Oxygen

Dissolved oxygen (DO) and temperature profiles are routinely taken in eutrophication-related studies. These measurements are essential for characterizing the mixing status, determining the presence or absence of oxygen above the sediments, the rate of hypolimnetic oxygen depletion, the number of days of “anoxia”, and whether the lake has suitable habitat for sensitive fish species. Anoxic conditions in lakes may also favor the growth of blue-green algae such as Microcystis (Reynolds and Walsby, 1975). The lack of oxygen in the bottom waters causes sediments to release such dissolved constituents as inorganic P, ammonia, and hydrogen sulfide. The initial disappearance of oxygen in the hypolimnion can occur prior to any noticeable change in the productivity of algae in the epilimnion because of the amplification of organic epilimnetic inputs by the sediments (Gliwicz and Kowalczewski, 1981). This makes the oxygen content of the hypolimnion and the rate of disappearance to be a potential “early warning system” of changes in trophic state.

Oxygen concentrations and rates of depletion has been used to characterize the lake and can in some instances be related back to the nutrient status. In contrast to the previous variables where epilimnetic measurements were key, the focus for dissolved oxygen in lakes is primarily on hypolimnetic concentrations. DO concentrations in the hypolimnion can be related to epilimnetic TP, annual primary production, and inversely to mean summer Secchi depth (Cornett and Rigler, 1979). The presence or absence of hypolimnetic oxygen was an early method of discriminating between oligotrophic and eutrophic lakes (Thienemann, 1921) that is still used today. Hypolimnetic oxygen depletion rates have been used as a variable of trophic state by several investigators (Mortimer, 1941; Rast et al., 1983). This would not apply to allochthonous organic loading, which may deplete DO independent of nutrient concentrations.

Because the presence or absence of hypolimnetic oxygen and oxygen depletion rates is confounded by the size of the hypolimnion, the rate is usually indexed to the area of the hypolimnetic surface and termed the areal hypolimnetic oxygen deficit (AHOD) (see Hutchinson. 1957 and Wetzel, 1975). Compensating for the size of the hypolimnion will not necessarily give a value correlated with the amount of productivity or nutrient status of the epilimnion because the rate of oxygen consumption is dependent as well on temperature. Latitudinal differences in AHOD will exist independent of the trophic status (biomass concentration) of the lake. Hypolimnetic oxygen depletion rate is also affected by dissolved color and Hutchinson (1957) recommends that AHOD not be used on lakes with color greater than 10 Pt units.

Walker (1979) used trophic status, AHOD, mean hypolimnion depth, and oxygen concentration at spring turnover to predict the effective number of days of oxygen supply present in the hypolimnion after spring turnover. Nurnberg (1996) quantified hypolimnetic anoxia based on DO profiles and lake morphometry and related this “anoxic factor” to other trophic status variables. Thus DO is an important variable to consider when developing eutrophication criteria even though it does not define trophic state, and lags behind other response variables such as algal biomass and speciation.

• *Analysis*

Measurements are typically taken at appropriate intervals from the surface to the bottom of the lake on each sample date. Oxygen is typically taken using a remote sensing probe, although oxygen can be also measured by analyzing individual samples using the Azide Modification of the Winkler technique (APHA, 1995). The minimum frequency for characterizing mixing and oxygen status of the lake is dependent on the rate at which oxygen can be depleted in the water body, which itself is dependent on the size and temperature of the hypolimnion and the potential amount of organic matter that may be settling into this region. In some cases, the minimum frequency may be a month, in others, only a few hours. Some shallow lakes experience daily oxygen depletion near the bottom.

5. Macrophytes

The term ‘macrophyte’ refers to any plant life larger than the microscopic algae in aquatic systems. It may be a plant rooted in the sediment, such as pond weeds or cattails, or that is free-floating, such as duckweed or coontail. It also includes large algae such as Chara. Macrophytes are important in any consideration of trophic state because they are also plants and, therefore, are potential utilizers of incoming plant nutrients. Although a great deal of research has been done on macrophytes, the ability to predict the extent of macrophytes based on nutrient load or even nutrient concentration still has not been attained.

Although macrophytes require nutrients for growth, the immediate origin of those nutrients is still a matter of some controversy. Originally it was thought that macrophytes may compete with algae for nutrients in the water, and that may be the case for floating species, such as duckweed or coontail. Evidence suggests that rooted aquatic plants draw most, if not all, of their nutrients from the sediments, not the water. In this manner, they can obtain nutrients from the sedimented historical phosphorus. This use of historical nutrients obscures or even eliminates correlations and predictions of macrophyte biomass based on contemporary nutrient loading. It also discourages the management of macrophyte-based eutrophication by nutrient loading control because the macrophytes may persist and most likely even spread after nutrient reduction.

Despite the lack of correlation between macrophyte biomass and nutrient loading, they still may be related. Nutrients attached to particles will settle out, bringing new substrate and nutrients to the macrophytes. Dead algae will also settle, again increasing substrate and nutrients. The presence of macrophytes near water inputs may actually serve to intercept sediment particles, thus building up these regions faster than if the particles were allowed to sediment throughout the lake. Increased nutrient loading can be expected to enhance the sedimentation rate and thus increase the areal coverage of macrophytes (Carpenter and Lodge, 1986). The macrophytes may actually serve as a positive feedback mechanism that enhances the filling in of lakes; their own structures serving to fill in the littoral area and increasing the colonizable area even more.

There is considerable evidence suggesting that some sort of antagonism exists between macrophytes and floating algae in lakes and ponds. Macrophyte density may be suppressed when algal densities are high, presumably because the algae and/or epiphytes on plant surfaces shade out macrophytes. If macrophytes are dense, there are accounts of the algae not growing, even in the open areas outside the macrophyte beds. It has been hypothesized that a chemical is excreted by the macrophyte that suppresses algal growth. According to the most sweeping theory relating eutrophication to the relationship between algae and macrophytes, as a lake eutrophies it may become dominated by either algae or by macrophytes, but not both (Scheffer, 1989; Scheffer et al., 1993). Catastrophic events, such as herbiciding or weed harvesting can shift a macrophyte-based system entirely into an algal-based system. Alternatively, removal of the algae by algicides or by nutrient reduction will shift the system over into a macrophyte-dominated system with little algae present. Both of these systems are stable and will persist unless again shifted by external events. If this model is correct, assessment and prediction of the response to nutrient loading increases or reductions will be difficult unless the mechanism underlying these alternate states is known. However, the ability to manipulate the system as Scheffer has suggested allows the selection of the most desirable type of condition, algae or macrophytes, for a given use and enrichment level.

Most trophic state and, indeed, all simple nutrient loading models ignore the growth and extent of macrophytes probably reflecting the early limnological emphasis on open-water algae. This neglect of the macrophytes hinders the determination of the impact of nutrients on the entire biological system. If nutrient loading models or trophic state variables do not account for macrophyte biomass, they may underestimate the potential impact of nutrients in macrophyte-dominated lakes.

• *Analysis*

The solution for macrophyte biomass determination could be very simple. Canfield et al. (1983) proposed the assessment of trophic state based on the total phosphorus concentration of the lake, including the amount of phosphorus in macrophytes in the lake. The total macrophyte biomass in the lake is estimated by the equation:

$$TSMB = SA \times C \times B$$

Where: TSMB = total submersed macrophyte biomass, SA = lake surface area, C = percent cover of submersed aquatic macrophytes, and B = average biomass collected with a sampler.

Canfield et al. (1983) estimated the total phosphorus in plant biomass based on the phosphorus in each species and the relative abundance of each species. The total phosphorus content of the lake was obtained by adding the amount of phosphorus in the macrophytes to the amount estimated to be in the water column. There seems to be no reason why the same approach could not be used to measure total plant biomass or chlorophyll. Trophic state could then include both macrophytes and algae and have internally consistent units.

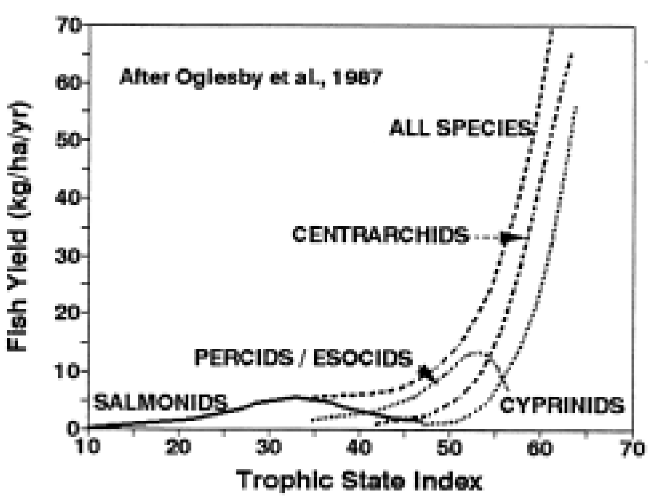
6. Biological Community Structure

Some early trophic classifications were based on the biota of lakes. August Thienemann simultaneously developed a classification scheme based on the species of benthic chironomids in lakes and on the hypolimnetic oxygen concentration that affected their species composition (Thienemann 1921). It must have seemed reasonable at the time that the classifications of Thienemann and Naumann could be joined, because Naumann's eutrophic lakes also lacked oxygen in the hypolimnion and had distinct benthic fauna (Thienemann 1921).

Because of Thienemann, the benthos of lakes has received a great deal of attention in trophic classification. Chironomids, clams, and oligochaete worms have been shown to change with trophic state. In most cases, these changes are related to the loss of oxygen in the hypolimnion. Algal species change as a lake becomes more eutrophic, with a dominance of diatoms shifting to cyanobacteria (blue-green algae). Certain species of diatoms are characterized as being found largely in oligotrophic lakes while others are found in eutrophic situations. Since the frustrules of diatoms are preserved in the sediment, this change in species allows a paleolimnological investigation of past trophic states. Zooplankton species change as well, but their change is confounded by alterations in the intensity of predation upon them as the density of zooplanktivorous fish increases, perhaps, the result of alterations in the density of the macrophytes that give the fish shelter from their predators.

Generally fish yield increases as the productivity of the lake increases. However, there may be changes in the dominant fish species as a lake eutrophies (Oglesby, et al. 1987; **Figure 5.1**). In northern lakes, salmonids may dominate in clear lakes having oxygenated hypolimnia. When primary productivity increases to the point that the hypolimnion becomes anoxic, then salmonids may disappear to be replaced by percids; then percids are replaced by centrarchids; and finally, at the highest nutrient concentrations, rough fish such as carp or bullheads prevail.

Figure 5.1: Changes in Fish Species Yield With Trophic State



• *Analysis*

Unfortunately changes in biological structure do not fit neatly into a nutrient-based classification because structural changes can occur along any environmental axis such as pH or temperature. The bioassessment of aquatic habitats has its strength in the concept that the organisms can be sensitive variables of the condition of the aquatic environment, however, unless a great deal is known about the requirements of the organisms themselves, the assessment does not necessarily indicate the nature of the disturbance. Such general variables would be of little use as variables of nutrient change if they were susceptible to change by a large number of other factors as well.

The fact that the assessment of the species or species complexes in a lake may not be solely an indicator of nutrient-related changes does not mean that assessing and tracking the biological structure would not be useful. It could be that subtle changes brought about by nutrient enrichment may affect one or more groups and these changes may be more apparent in the structure than in the biomass-related or nutrients themselves.

D. Land Use

Changes in land use in a lake's watershed is a viable early warning indicator of potential lake eutrophication. Landscape data can be used to characterize the watersheds of a population of lakes and to estimate potential nutrient loadings under a variety of management scenarios. For example the State of Maine seeks to protect lake water quality by limiting the "acceptable" increase in P in their lakes which may result from changes in land use in the watershed. Very strict requirements for handling storm water are a primary aspect of their approach (see Maine case study in Appendix B). The changes in land use of most concern are typically the shift from forested or open uses to agricultural or urban land uses. Phosphorus exports and concentrations associated with various land uses are fairly well documented in the literature (e.g., Reckhow and Simpson, 1980) as well as the effects of the increased loading on lakes. Thus, increases in P loading as related to changes in land use can be estimated, and the impact of the changes can be described by means of empirical models. Whenever possible it is advisable to use P concentration and export data summarized based on watersheds in a state or region since P export may vary between regions as well as between land use types. Some general notes and examples follow.

The generalized land use categories often considered for modeling or prediction purposes are: forest, water and marsh, cultivated, pasture/open, and developed (urban and residential). While P exports and concentrations from a given land use may vary substantially in the literature some general patterns emerge. The average phosphorus concentrations found by Omernik (1976) give some indication of the radical changes in concentration alone when land is disturbed. If the changes in water loading caused by increased impervious surfaces and decreased plant transpiration are included, the potential impact of human activity in the watershed can be easily seen.

Phosphorus export from forested land are typically low, on the order of 0.1 to 0.15 kg P ha/yr (Reckhow and Simpson, 1980; Verry and Timmons, 1982). Based on data from the predominately forested (**Table 5.3**) Northern Lakes and Forest ecoregion of Minnesota, stream TP concentrations typically range from 20-50 µg/L (McCollor and Heiskary, 1993; **Table 5.4**).

This range of exports and concentrations is often applicable for marsh land use as well though P export will vary seasonally in marshes.

Pastured and open land use is a somewhat nebulous category which might include idle grasslands (e.g., Conservation Reserve Program, CRP), park lands, or heavily pastured lands. Feedlots should not be included in this category but rather should be considered separately with estimates made on a per animal unit basis. Pastured and open park land exports often

Table 5.3: Median Total Phosphorus (µg/L) Concentrations As Affected By Mixing Status and Ecoregion In Minnesota *(Source: Heiskary and Wilson, 1988)*

	Mixing Status					
Ecoregion	**Class I Dimictic (Mixes only in Spring and Fall)**		**Intermittently Mixed**		**Continuously Mixed**	
Northern Lakes and Forests	20	*(n=257)*	26	*(n=87)*	29	*(n=199)*
North Central Hardwood Forest	39	*(n=152)*	62	*(n=71)*	89	*(n=145)*
Western Corn Belt Plains	69	*(n=4)*	135	*(n=3)*	141	*(n=38)*

Table 5.4: Interquartile Range of Phosphorus Concentrations for Minimally Impacted Streams in Minnesota by Ecoregion, 1970-1992 *(Source: McCollor and Heiskary, 1993)*

	Percentile		
Ecoregion	**25%**	**50%**	**75%**
Northern Lakes and Forests	20	40	50
Northern Minnesota Wetlands	40	60	90
North Central Hardwood Forest	60	90	150
Northern Glaciated Plains	90	160	250
Red River Valley	110	190	300
Western Corn Belt Plains	160	240	330

range from about 0.2-0.4 kg P ha/yr. For example, two monitored subwatersheds in southwest Minnesota, with 60 percent or more of the watershed in CRP, had P exports of 0.25-0.40 kg P ha/yr (Schuler, 1995).

Phosphorus export from cultivated lands is frequently high. Reckhow and Simpson (1980) note that P export might vary between mixed agriculture (0.4-2.3 kg P ha/yr) and row crops (0.2-0.9 kg P ha/yr). P exports from two southwest Minnesota watersheds characterized by 81 percent and 49 percent cultivated land use were 0.4 and 0.6 kg P ha/yr. P concentrations from streams in the highly agricultural Western Corn Belt Plains ecoregion of Minnesota typically range from 160 - 330 µg/L (**Table 5.4**). Prairie and Kalff (1986) suggest however that P export from agricultural land varies as a function of watershed size and they present equations for calculation of P export by land use type and watershed size. In general, as watershed size increases P export tends to decrease in agricultural lands with row crops and pasture exhibiting the greatest decrease. In practice this often leads to P export coefficients on the order of 0.2 - 0.6 kg P ha/yr for cultivated lands. This was not the case in forested watersheds where little change, as a function of watershed size, was noted.

Urban land uses tend to export P at rates often equivalent to or higher than some cultivated land uses. The extent of impervious surfaces is a primary reason for higher export rates. These impervious surfaces are very efficient conduits for exporting water and contaminants off the landscape. Thus high P exports from urban land uses might be more a function of efficiency of delivery rather than land use per se. Reckhow and Simpson (1980) suggest a range of 0.5 to 1.25 kg P ha/yr for urban land uses. Walker (1985a) estimated urban P export of 0.5 kg P ha/yr for low-density residential in Minnesota and 1.2 kg P ha/yr for mixed urban and commercial. The higher range of P exports might be appropriate where storm sewers drain impervious areas without the benefit of intervening sedimentation basins. Bannerman et al. (1993) in a comprehensive study of storm water in Madison, Wisconsin found TP concentrations, as monitored at specific sites in the city, to range from a low of 150 µg/L from roofs to 2,670 µg/L from lawns. However, in terms of critical-source areas and contaminant-load percentages, streets and driveways, where runoff volumes were high, accounted for 78 percent of the overall TP loading from the residential land use area while lawns, where runoff volumes were low, accounted for 14 percent in their study.

- *Analysis*

The availability of land use data may vary between locales. However with the increasing use of GIS databases this aspect of lake and watershed assessment should become easier in the future. In general the first step is to delineate the total watershed of the lake. It may be worthwhile to also delineate the immediate watershed (that portion which drains directly to the lake without going through another lake or major wetland) since land use changes in that portion of the watershed may ultimately have the greatest impact on the lake of concern. Once the watershed is delineated land use information might be acquired from GIS data, aerial photos, and/or other records which might be available through soil and water conservation district, local planning and zoning offices or other sources. Land use categories should be mapped and summaries in terms of the total area (e.g., hectares) and percent composition of the watershed by land use type should be noted. This information combined with current monitoring data should provide a basis to begin to evaluate the affect of future changes in land use on the water quality of the lake. It may also be instructive to have land use data from a representative subset of lake watersheds in a given state or ecoregion for comparison purposes. For example, the land use composition of reference-lake watersheds has been evaluated by ecoregion for Minnesota (**Table 5.5**). This provides a basis for comparing the land use assemblage for the lake under study as compared to the typical composition for lakes in the same region. This comparison may, in part, explain deviations in water quality from regional norms or typical values.

Table 5.5: Typical Watershed Land Use Composition For Minnesota Ecoregion Reference Lakes (Based On Interquartile Range)

Land Use (%)	**Northern Lakes Forests**	**North Central Hardwood Forests**	**Western Corn Belt Plains**	**Northern Glaciated Plains**
Forest	54-81	6-25	0-15	0-1
Water & Marsh	14-31	14-30	3-26	8-26
Cultivated	< 1	22-50	42-75	60-82
Pastured	0-6	11-25	0-7	5-15
Cultivated & Pastured	0-7	36-68	48-76	68-90
Developed	0-7	2-9	0-16	0-2

CHAPTER 6

Identifying and Characterizing Reference Conditions

A. The Significance of Reference Conditions

The establishment of lake reference conditions for each of the lake classes identified by a state is a critical part of the nutrient criteria development process. Reference conditions are the quantitative descriptions of lake conditions used as a standard for comparative purposes. Ideally, reference conditions associated with nutrient-related variables such as phosphorus, nitrogen, and chlorophyll *a* are concentrations representative of lake conditions in the absence of anthropogenic disturbances and pollution. However, because it can be argued that most, if not all, lakes have been impacted by human activity to some degree, reference conditions realistically represent the least impacted conditions or what is considered to be the most attainable conditions. While the reference conditions themselves are not specifically established as criteria, they help to set the upper bounds of what can be considered the most natural and attainable lake conditions for a specific region. Knowing this reference best case situation allows resource managers to set criteria at appropriate levels when considering other relevant factors such as attainment of use designation, regional perceptions of water quality, and physical/ geological influences.

B. Approaches to Establishing Reference Conditions

In accordance with the five elements of nutrient criteria development, there are three general approaches for establishing reference conditions:

- *Direct observation (data collection) of sites and estimation or inference of reference conditions.* This may take two forms; (a) observation of sites that meet reference site requirements, and (b) observation (data) of an entire population of lakes, and an assumption that some percentile (for example, the median or the 75th percentile) represents the least disturbed lakes remaining.
- *Paleolimnological reconstruction of past conditions.* This is inference of reference conditions from observations of non-reference sites. It requires statistical models based on large data sets, and a sample of dated sediment cores for the lake classes in question.

ANTIDEGRADATION - PREVENTING THE DETERIORATION OF REFERENCE CONDITIONS

A critical requirement for the use of reference conditions associated with nutrient criteria is the USEPA antidegradation policy, which protects against incremental deterioration of waterbodies and reference conditions. An observed downward trend in the conditions of reference sites cannot be used to justify relaxing reference expectations, reference conditions, and the associated nutrient criteria. Once established, nutrient criteria may only be refined in a positive direction in response to improved conditions.

Without antidegradation safeguards, even the establishment of reference conditions and nutrient criteria could still allow for continual deterioration of water quality. For example, construction and development in watersheds containing lakes considered to be of excellent quality and which have been designated as reference lakes for a region could result in a degradation of nutrient levels and related variables and enhance eutrophication. If a number of the reference lakes in a region have suffered such deterioration, the reference conditions established from the set of reference lakes will have been degraded relative to their earlier state, and the comparative standard will have been lowered.

To combat this states should implement an effective antidegradation policy that promotes continually improving lake conditions. As an example, Maine has an antidegradation policy that requires that lakes remain stable or improve in trophic state (Courtemanch et al., 1989; NALMS, 1992).

- *Model-based prediction or extrapolation of reference conditions from related data sets or related knowledge.* The predictions may come from statistical models (usually regression models), mass balance models, or combinations of the two.

These three approaches are not exclusive and require professional judgement and expertise to implement. Regional experts are often the most qualified to make determinations about which lakes in a region most likely represent “ideal” or most desirable conditions. Local expert knowledge of regional characteristics, human induced changes over time to regional lake and watershed conditions, patterns of development associated with a lake and its watershed, and current conditions as they relate to perceived impaired or unimpaired status can many times be the most efficient and cost effective way of identifying candidate reference lakes. This method should only be used when it is clear that adequate professional expertise exists for a region. Experts who may be qualified to participate in the selection process could come from an array of disciplines such as limnology, biology, resource management, engineering, and other related fields.

1. Direct Observation of Reference Lakes

(a) Reference Lake Approach

Reference lakes must be representative of a region and their conditions should represent the best range of minimally impacted conditions that can be expected of similar lakes within the region. Although lakes that are undisturbed by human activities are ideal as reference sites, land use practices and atmospheric pollution have so altered the landscape and quality of water resources nationally that truly undisturbed lakes are rarely available.

A set of requirements may be established to help define a minimally impacted lake and, therefore, make the selection of reference sites a rule-based procedure. For example, reference lakes could be chosen only from park or preserve areas (i.e., areas that have not been subjected to any type of significant development within a reasonable period of time). If relatively unimpacted conditions do not occur in the region, the selection process may be modified to be more realistic and to reflect the least altered lakes. Such selection can pertain to the condition of the watershed, as well as the lake itself. The following are examples of conditions that can be defined to select reference lakes:

- *Land use.* Natural vegetation has a positive effect on water quality and hydrological response of streams. Reference lakes could be chosen from watersheds that have an established minimum percentage of existing natural vegetation, such as 50% or more. Alternatively, reference criteria could be defined as less than a certain percentage of urban or residential land use in the watershed.
- *Riparian zones.* Zones of natural vegetation alongside the lakeshore and streams stabilize shorelines from erosion and contribute to the aquatic food source through allochthonous input. They also reduce nonpoint pollution by absorbing and neutralizing nutrients and contaminants. Reference lakes could be chosen from watersheds that contain at least a set minimum area of existing natural riparian zone, regardless of land use outside the riparian buffers. For example, reference lakes could be required to have 65% or more of the lakeshore and its immediate tributaries in natural bankside vegetation to a distance of at least 10 meters from the shoreline.
- *Best management practices.* Urban, industrial, suburban, and agricultural nonpoint source pollution can be reduced with successful best management practices (BMPs). Watersheds from which reference lakes are chosen could be required to have certain BMPs in place, provided that the efficacy of the BMPs has been demonstrated.
- *Discharges*. Point source discharges from industry (e.g., NPDES, storm water) and from municipal wastewater treatment plants and known areas of nonpoint source discharges (e.g., from agricultural areas) have the potential to negatively affect water quality of streams, rivers, and lakes. Reference lakes could be chosen from watersheds that have no discharges or which have a defined maximum level of discharges into surface waters.
- *Management*. Management actions, such as controlling water level fluctuations for hydropower or flood control, can significantly influence lake conditions. Reference lakes could be limited to those lakes that are in no way affected or are affected only in a very limited way by management activities.

Predefined reference conditions for lakes have been used in Minnesota to determine ambient phosphorus criteria (Heiskary, 1989; see Case Study at the end of this chapter). Maine uses a similar approach in regulating the water quality of streams (Davies et al., 1993).

• *Characterizing Reference Conditions*

The objective of reference condition characterization is to describe reference lake conditions in terms of the variables that have been chosen to express nutrient conditions. In order to properly characterize reference conditions, adequate data associated with the reference lakes must be available. If existing data are deemed to be insufficient for characterization purposes (see Chapter 4), then a sufficient number of reference lakes must be sampled to obtain the data necessary for characterization of reference conditions. A general "rule of thumb" for optimal

SIGNIFICANTLY ALTERED LAKES

If all lakes in a region are significantly altered, it might not be possible to select appropriate reference sites. In such a case, an alternative would be to use lakes from neighboring regions as reference sites if those lakes are deemed acceptable, by professional judgment, with respect to impact and overall comparability to the lakes of the affected region. If lakes from nearby regions cannot reasonably be considered reference sites, then reference lakes must be identified and reference conditions must be predicted or inferred from other information, including models and historical data. In designing such an approach, the consensus of a panel of regional experts helps ensure an objective and rational design.

reference sample size is 10-30 lakes per region, where each lake is a sampling unit (see Chapter IV for a discussion of sampling approaches and methodologies). Before sampling begins candidate variables should be evaluated and target variables selected (see Chapter V). All sampling and analytical activities should be conducted according to standard protocols to ensure validity.

During sampling visits, the candidate reference lakes should be examined to confirm whether they actually meet the reference criteria. This may include looking for discharges into the lake or its tributaries and a quick survey of the lake watershed to determine if new modifications may have changed the lake. If possible, measurements should be made for in-lake and discharge nutrient concentrations and biological response variables such as chlorophyll concentration and fish, macroinvertebrate, macrophyte and planktonic community variables. Lakes that do not meet reference requirements should be excluded from the reference data set.

Once the desired lake reference data have been obtained, statistical approaches can be used to determine if individual lakes fit the preliminary reference lake classification. The preliminary classification is refined through inspection of plotted data (for example, using box and whisker plots, scatter plots or other means of graphical analysis), professional judgment, and statistical tests of final classification hypotheses. Next, the values and distribution of reference metrics are compared among ecoregion or lake type. Regions that appear to be similar to each other can be combined for the final classification. For two regions to be so combined, most of the metric distributions must be similar. Chapter 7 further describes the derivation of criteria from these reference lake data sets. States which share an ecoregion are encouraged to also share data to determine reference conditions.

(b) Frequency Distribution Approach

If a fixed definition of reference condition is deemed to be overly restrictive or an impractical ideal, then an empirical working definition is an alternative. For example, because natural conditions for reservoirs cannot be defined, the best existing conditions are used instead. This approach is also useful in ecoregions with little contiguous natural vegetation remaining, such as in the agricultural Midwest. The approach does not involve the identification of reference lakes, but sets reference conditions by using an entire population of lakes from within a region. It is especially relevant for human-made impoundments and reservoirs, where no least-impaired systems exist, as well as for lakes subject to strong and relatively uniform human impacts, such as in large urbanized areas or in heavily agricultural regions.

A representative sample of lakes is taken from the entire regional lake population. Lakes that are known to be severely impaired may be excluded from the sample, if desired. The population distribution of each selected variable is determined, and the best quartile or 5th percentile of each variable is taken as its reference value. The reference value is a “reasonable” upper limit (excluding outliers of the population distribution). See Chapter 7 for a further discussion. In an area of known impairment, the best 5th percentile should be used.

A central assumption of the frequency distribution approach is that at least some sites in the population of lakes are high quality lakes, which will be reflected in the values of the individual variables. Because they have no independent definition, reference conditions defined in this way must be taken as preliminary and subject to future reinterpretation, especially as lake management efforts produce improved conditions. Periodic examination of the reference values for trends can detect deterioration or improvement. Strictly speaking, the distributional approach is circular because the reference nutrient conditions are characterized as the best of existing nutrient conditions, without consideration of measured anthropogenic influence. This is necessary when reference criteria cannot be defined a priori, or when all lakes under consideration are equally impaired. The objective of the method is to develop a measurement standard for assessing lakes. Its validity must then rest on external confirmation of the response of variables to stressors, usually from published or other independent studies. While direct observation of reference lakes is the preferred approach, paleolimnological reconstruction and model extrapolation are also possible approaches for reference condition determination.

2. Paleolimnological Reconstruction

Many groups of organisms in lakes leave remains in the bottom sediments. Some of the remains are resistant to decay and become a permanent biological record of life in the lake. By comparison of the past biota of a lake to present-day biota of many lakes, past environmental conditions can be inferred. Several groups of organisms have been used for paleolimnology: diatoms and chrysophytes; sponges; bryozoans; cladocerans; and chironomid larvae. Of these, diatom frustules and chrysophyte scales have been used most often, and most successfully, to infer past chemical conditions (e.g., Charles and Smol 1994). The preserved diatoms provide an integrated record of the diatom assemblage in the lake. A sample of the top 1 to 2 centimeters of lake sediment contains a representative sample of diatoms from the most recent 1 to 3 years. If the lake sediments remain undisturbed, then diatoms and chrysophytes preserved in lake sediments are integrators of lake history (Charles et al. 1994, Dixit et al. 1992).

Inference of past nutrient conditions from biological remains is based on strong relationships of biota with water quality. Many algal species are indicators of particular nutrient conditions, and the assemblage found can therefore be used to infer nutrient conditions. Environmental variables, such as alkalinity, aluminum, dissolved organic carbon (DOC), salinity, nickel, conductivity, calcium, total nitrogen, total phosphorus, Secchi transparency, and trophic state also have been inferred using diatom-based predictive models (Charles et al. 1994, Dixit et al. 1992, Fritz 1990). Sediment cores can be calibrated with other information (e.g., varves, known contamination events, radioisotopes, pollen) to obtain time series with resolution of up to 1 to 10 years. The diatom and chrysophyte fossil record can therefore aid in establishing reference conditions by enhancing the historical record of prior data collections and events.

Paleolimnological analysis, part of the EMAP protocol (USEPA 1994b), requires development of a data set that associates current environmental conditions with current surficial diatom assemblages. Present-day associations are used to infer past conditions based on fossil diatom assemblages in deeper sediment layers. Quantitative prediction is usually done in two steps: development of predictive models (calibration or transfer functions), followed by use of the models to infer environmental variables from fossil assemblages (Charles and Smol 1994).

(a) Inference of Past Conditions

Inference of past environmental conditions from fossil assemblages requires a sizable calibration data set that includes both assemblages and environmental (chemical) measurements. The calibration data set typically consists of recent sediment samples (top 1 cm) with complete lake water quality and chemical estimation from at least 50 lakes. The calibration data set should include lakes that span the ranges of all important environmental variables that are being investigated. For example, development of predictive models for acidification requires a calibration data set that includes alkaline, neutral and acidic lakes; development of predictive models for nutrient concentrations would require a calibration data set that includes lakes with high and low concentrations of nitrogen, phosphorus and silica, and combinations of the nutrients. The sedimented diatom assemblage is identified and enumerated for each lake in the calibration sample.

The first step is to determine whether species-environment relationships are strong enough to permit development of predictive models for inference of environmental conditions. Currently, this is done using canonical correspondence analysis (CCA; Dixit et al. 1992, Jongman et al. 1987, ter Braak 1986). CCA is an ordination technique that orders sites on environmental gradients. Unlike linear models such as canonical correlation, there is no assumption that species abundance is a linear response to environmental gradients. Instead, species are assumed to have a unimodal response to gradients, such that abundance of a species is reduced above and below the optimum value of an environmental variable (ter Braak 1986). The assumption of modal responses, where each species has optimum values of nutrients, temperature, light, pH, etc., is more realistic for algae than are linear responses (e.g., Tilman 1982). The CCA identifies environmental variables that have strong associations with species composition, and therefore are suitable for predictive model development.

Models to predict values of environmental variables (e.g., nutrients) are developed with weighted averaging regression (Charles and Smol 1994). The computer program WACALIB (Line et al. 1994) is an efficient way to perform these calculations. The technique also uses the assumption of unimodal optima of environmental variables, as does CCA. The optimum condition for each taxon is the average of mean values for the environmental variable at sites in which the taxon is found, weighted by the abundance of the taxon (Charles and Smol 1994). The inferred value of the environmental variable is in turn the sum of optima (for that variable) for all taxa at a site, weighted by the relative abundance of each taxon. Techniques have also been developed to quantify error and uncertainty of the predictions (Birks et al. 1990). Further documentation of these methods is in Charles and Smol (1994), Charles et al. (l994), Birks et al. (1990), and ter Braak and Juggins (1993).

(b) Existing Diatom Databases

Paleolimnological databases exist for several regions of the country. The largest of these is the Paleoecological Investigation of Recent Lake Acidification (PIRLA), in the northeast, but other data bases exist for the Upper Midwest and Florida. Paleolimnology to establish reference conditions for impoundments and reservoirs is not recommended because impoundments undergo succession of several years or more following inundation. A reference as an attainable condition would thus be impossible to define for reservoirs from paleolimnological data.

3. Model Prediction and Extrapolation

If little or no limnological data are available for a given lake or region, reference conditions can be predicted by inference or extrapolation of various models. Although extrapolation of models beyond their original calibration data is risky, it may be the only option to estimate reference conditions if no reference data exist or are likely to exist. There are two approaches; (1) the morphoedaphic index method (MEI), and (2) extrapolating natural background nutrient loading that would occur under undisturbed, conditions followed by estimation of nutrient concentrations and trophic state with a mass balance model. These methods are discussed in more detail in Chapter 8.

The MEI is the ratio of total dissolved solids in lake water to the mean depth of the lake. Several early studies suggested that the MEI was correlated with fish and phytoplankton production of lakes (e.g., Rawson 1951, Ryder 1961, Oglesby 1977). The MEI approach was extended by Vighi and Chiaudani (1985) to predict phosphorus concentrations resulting from natural, background loading in undisturbed watersheds — in short, to predict reference phosphorus concentrations. The MEI approach is simple and appears to be highly successful for a limited set of cool-temperate lakes. It has been largely ignored by North American limnologists, possibly because of its simplicity, and as a result, it has not been calibrated and tested for a wider variety of lakes. The approach is promising, but it needs to be recalibrated and tested with regional reference lake data sets.

Mass Balance models are a means of estimating concentrations of substances (primarily nutrients) from knowledge of loading into a lake and hydrology of a lake (see Chapter 2, Section C). A mass balance model by itself will not establish reference conditions — it will predict nutrient concentrations given certain loading values. Use of a mass-balance model to derive reference conditions, therefore, also requires an estimate of natural, background nutrient loading to a lake.

If a lake, or lakes of a region, are primarily stream-fed, an estimate of background nutrient loading may be made from stream water quality data with some method for selecting (or assuming) a reference distribution or reference value of stream nutrient concentrations.

Fulmer and Cooke (1990) used a frequency distribution approach, combined with loading and mass balance models to estimate the reference conditions of a state's waterbodies. They estimated the phosphorus concentration in 19 Ohio reservoirs based on the characteristics in the ecoregions in which the reservoirs were located. For the incoming phosphorus concentration, they used the 25th percentile of stream phosphorus concentration in four of Ohio's ecoregions (the "best quartile"). The resulting phosphorus estimate they termed the "attainable phosphorus concentration," suggesting that this was a conservative estimate of the stream phosphorus concentration attainable through wastewater treatment, improvements in agricultural practices, and treatment of urban runoff in the watershed.

The authors then compared this estimated phosphorus value to that actually found in the reservoir after first transforming the values to the Trophic State Index values of Carlson (1977). The difference between the trophic state indices was termed "the restoration potential" of the waterbody. This would target those lakes which deviate the most from the attainable trophic state for that body. This approach is important because it combines the use of the ecoregion to estimate reference conditions for the reservoir with the emphasis of differing restoration potentials based on the specific characteristics of the individual reservoir. This simple but effective approach only applies to stream-fed lakes (principally reservoirs). Groundwater-fed and headwater lakes would require one of the other methods for estimating loading that does not rely on stream concentrations.

Many states have ongoing biological criteria programs, and have identified least stressed streams as reference sites. Biological reference sites could likewise serve as reference sites for stream nutrient criteria, and background nutrient concentrations and loading. This method would only be appropriate for impoundments and flowage lakes, which are stream-fed, and not for lakes with substantial groundwater input.

CHAPTER 7

Nutrient Criteria Development

A. Introduction: Elements of Nutrient Criteria

As presented in Chapter 1, there are five essential elements to the development of nutrient criteria associated with the EPA strategy to control cultural eutrophication. These five elements are summarized as follows:

1. An investigation of the historical record

This is the collection and evaluation of both anecdotal information and data sets relative to the lake and watershed of concern. This information may be gathered from residents of the area of long standing and memory, local fishermen, and county, state and federal natural resource management and land use planning agencies. Academic institutions are also an excellent source of information and data. Often faculty will have extensive water quality or fishery information collected over several years as research or teaching projects. Occasionally, there are long-term historical data records such as phytoplankton composition or Secchi depth, collected by water supply authorities. In other instances, there may be high-quality data sets that are several decades old, such as the information collected by Birge and Juday on Wisconsin lakes. Most historical data is likely to consist of isolated observations on a small subset of lakes. More recent monitoring data may be available from volunteer monitoring organizations such as Lakewatch. These reports are not always common to routine literature reviews of published material, and will require direct contacts with the organizations to obtain this information. The same applies to the many “gray literature” reports prepared by county, state, and federal agencies.

Historical information, both quantitative and anecdotal, can be valuable, but it is often the most difficult to interpret. It nonetheless provides the investigator with a perspective on the relative quality of the resource over time. The principal difficulty is their compatibility with current methods and quality control. Methodologies for water quality and basic limnology have not changed greatly in the last 25 years. But all data must be carefully evaluated to determine if methodological biases would be introduced by combining historical and recent data to determine trends and historical reference condition. Typically, the most compatible data are those which require the least sophisticated equipment to collect: Secchi transparency, total suspended solids, and algal species composition (phytoplankton, periphyton). Nutrient concentrations and chlorophyll concentration are highly sensitive to methodological changes, and biases are magnified if the measured concentrations are near or below the method detection limit.

EPA datasets on the STORET system are also available and the National Nutrient Criteria Program also has information derived from STORET, but augmented with additional state and academic information. In many instances this data is of recent origin, e.g. since 1990 and a true historical perspective will not be possible without the additional, older information. An illustration of the significance of this historical information is the lake data base available in Wisconsin. The famous Birge and Juday studies extend back to the turn of the century, and in many cases this monitoring data has been maintained by state or university through the present. Such background information is invaluable to understanding the inherent nature of a particular system and lends the proper and accurate perspective necessary to distinguish natural from cultural enrichment. A good historical database is essential to the proper setting of nutrient criteria and later standards in that it provides the knowledge of what has happened before, what the “normal”, “natural” trends are, what disruption people have or have not caused, and what remediation efforts are reasonable.

2. Establishment of the reference condition

Present optimal lake conditions for the area must also be reliably established. This is the other half of the lake assessment necessary to a responsible evaluation. The historical record described above tells us what conditions were for the lake or lakes of concern. The establishment of the reference condition tells us the best present status of those lakes. In some instances, things were much better in the past because of less development and the present reference condition reveals how much the system has declined. On the other hand, depending on how far back the historical record extends, the degradation of the “cut out and get out” era of logging in the early part of the century may reveal the extent to which a system can recover. Both examples help the decision makers set appropriate nutrient criteria.

3. The use of models

Models which have been calibrated and verified can be used to extrapolate to a projected nutrient condition where existing data is either insufficient or unavailable. Often this entails using data from a similar lake in the same region or making a reasoned projection, accompanied by a set of clearly stated assumptions, from data from one point in time to estimate conditions in the future. In some instances, surrogate information such as Secchi depth and chlorophyll *a* concentration can be used to estimate phosphorus concentration. Chapter VIII should be consulted for more information in this regard.

4. Expert assessment of the information

Elements one through three above are essentially data gathering processes. This element and the one to follow are interpretive processes. The information gathered needs to be assessed for veracity and application. To do so we urge each EPA Region to establish a Technical Assistance Group of specialists to help the Agency and States establish the nutrient criteria for adoption into State water quality standards. These group members should be experts in limnology, water resource management, land resource management, and fisheries management as well as other appropriate specialties helpful to an objective and exhaustive evaluation of the information to establish the optimal nutrient criteria for those particular waterbodies in that particular area of the country.

5. Attention to downstream effects

Following the determination of the above experts, and the guidance in this manual, tentative criteria for given classes of lakes are established. But, before any criterion can be finally established, the Group must also consider the potential impact on downstream waters. If the criteria are not expected to provide for the attainment and maintenance of proximal downstream water quality, the Group should adjust the criteria in question accordingly.

B. Decision Making Using the Elements of Nutrient Criteria

The preliminary effort should deal first with classification. EPA has developed a national ecoregion-based classification system to initiate the process. The country has been divided into nutrient ecoregions using the initial EPA nutrient ecoregion map (see Figure 1.1). States and regions are encouraged to develop subregions within the fourteen main nutrient ecoregions, as supported by new data evaluation. The next step is to carry out physical classification procedures such as subdividing all lakes in the dataset into similar classes, most commonly lakes of similar size, e.g., ten to fifty acres; 51 to 150 acres; 151 to 300, and larger. Volume and retention time can also be used.

Once the system of physical classification has been established, data for all lakes or reservoirs in that class should be compiled and sub-sorted according to designated use (the historical record - Element No. 1 - should include this information). The EPA is developing a nutrient database, which will be available as an initial data collection effort. This data base will include data for total nitrogen, total phosphorus, chlorophyll a, and turbidity as the four main parameters as well as other potentially relevant parameters. EPA will also use this data base to support development of the regional nutrient criteria. The data base should be expanded by additional State, academic, and federal databases acquired from colleagues in the area. All data will have to be sorted for quality and applicability. Issues which should be addressed before incorporating a dataset into the criteria development process (see also Chapter Four) include how carefully the samples were collected, from what season and locality (especially whether or not samples were taken from degraded or reference quality waters), how well analyzed, how well locations were pin pointed, and how often replicated.

The classification process may reveal unique lakes or sets of lakes which defy the routine classification approach. Examples may include remarkably oligotrophic lakes perceived as an exceptional natural resource, dystrophic or stained acid bog lakes which may have a separate biological response to enrichment, and lakes or reservoirs which are already deliberately over-enriched. Each State or Tribe and EPA Region will have to address such conditions as most appropriate to that region, while still adhering to the objective of improving the trophic condition of those lakes by reducing cultural eutrophication.

From the historical database, candidate reference sites (Element No. 2) can be selected based on the water quality reported and the location of the lakes and samples from those lakes. This effort should divide all lakes (or reservoirs) into potential reference and potential test systems. The highest quality, most undeveloped systems should be candidate references. These sites should be visited and sampled to confirm their quality. It is important to recognize that seasonality must also be accounted for, so the sampling and assessment process will take at least a year or two.

If data are scarce, modeling (Element No. 3) may be necessary to help establish the reference condition, (i.e. that compilation of reference site characteristics that best represent the optimal trophic condition for lakes or reservoirs of that class). Modeling, like paleolimnology, can be used in a weight of evidence approach to develop nutrient criteria, much like the frequency distribution approaches discussed in Section C, but must await further refinement before being used in the potentially regulatory context of criteria development.

The State or Tribal experts together with the Regional TAG should then assess the classification system and attendant data to establish the reference lakes and derived reference condition (Element No. 4). This will involve selecting the appropriate cutoff point in the distribution of values for each reference set of lakes.

The State or Tribe should establish nutrient criteria at levels necessary to protect each designated use for those lakes. As with criteria for other parameters, the States' water quality standards must be based on EPA's 304(a) nutrient criteria guidance or, if not, must be otherwise scientifically defensible (40 CFR 131). This point is described in more detail in Section C below.

The final step in establishing the nutrient criteria is to assess the potential downstream effects (Element No. 5) of setting a criterion for a given class of lakes. Will this level of nitrogen and phosphorus when present in the waterbody have detrimental effects on the downstream receiving waters? Downstream receiving waters are considered to be those immediately below the lake or reservoir and within a few miles of it. The nations' estuaries and coastal marine waters are ultimately the recipients of all discharges to the surface waters and should benefit from this program, but the intent is to accomplish this indirectly by a sequential and cumulative improvement of our surface waters. For example, the Atlantic Ocean is eventually the beneficiary of lake enrichment improvements in the Cobbosee Lake Watershed in Maine, but the individual manager need only worry about the downstream effects on the Kennebec River in setting nutrient criteria. The cumulative sequence of similar improvements progressing downstream are expected to help achieve coastal nutrient abatement.

If the State and RTAG specialists agree and document their decision that no adverse effects will result downstream, or that the downstream waters will be enhanced, then the tentative criteria can be adopted by the State as approved by EPA. However, if downstream waters are not adequately protected at the level of discharge associated with the proposed criteria, then that value should be adjusted accordingly.

Loading estimation models will be helpful in making this judgment as well as enlisting the assistance of managers associated with that downstream waterbody. It may be possible to coordinate management efforts and criteria to the benefit of both water resources and at a cost saving in management and monitoring by addressing conditions on both systems at the same time.

C. Establishment and Use of Regional Nutrient Criteria

USEPA headquarters is directing an effort to collect, manage, evaluate, and process national nutrient data for the purpose of establishing preliminary regional nutrient criteria for the country. The effort is based on retrieval of existing data from available data bases such as STORET and using aggregated Level III ecoregions (i.e., national nutrient ecoregions) as the basis for the evaluation (see Chapter III). The objective behind USEPA's effort is to provide a starting point for the evaluation and modification of State and Tribal regional nutrient criteria.

Preliminary criteria developed from this process will be reviewed by Regional nutrient teams with input from States and Tribes. The Regional teams will focus on the adequacy of the data used in the development process and on regional considerations that should be incorporated. The following is a brief outline of the process.

1. Initial data retrieval and processing

Nutrient data will be collected for site points (years 1990-present) from STORET, USGS's NAWQA, and other acceptable data bases and will then be grouped by nutrient ecoregion (Omernik's Level III aggregations). The HQ nutrient team will assess the data and will determine candidate "target" reference condition values for TP, TN, chlorophyll a, and Secchi depth.

The selection of a regional reference condition may be made using either of two approaches. In both instances the intention is to select an optimal reference condition value from the distribution of an available set of lake data for a given physical class of lakes or reservoirs.

One approach is to select a percentile from the distribution of measured variables of known reference lakes, i.e. highest quality or least impacted lakes of that size class of all lakes in the region. The variables of initial concern are TP, TN, chlorophyll *a*, and Secchi depth. Since these reference lakes are already acknowledged to be in an approximately ideal state, it is reasonable to select a lower percentile as the reference condition. EPA generally recommends the 25th percentile. An upper level of these ideal lakes would be essentially impossible for most other lakes to meet.

The other approach is to select a percentile from all lakes in the class or a random sample distribution of all lakes in the class. In this case it must be an upper percentile because the sample is expected to contain at least some degraded lakes if it is a truly random selection. This option is most useful in regions where the number of legitimate "natural" reference water bodies is usually very small such as highly developed land use areas like the agricultural lands of the Midwest and the urbanized east or west coasts. The EPA recommendation in this case is usually the 75th to 95th percentile depending upon the number of "natural" reference lakes available. If almost all reference lakes are impacted to some extent, than the 95th percentile should be used.

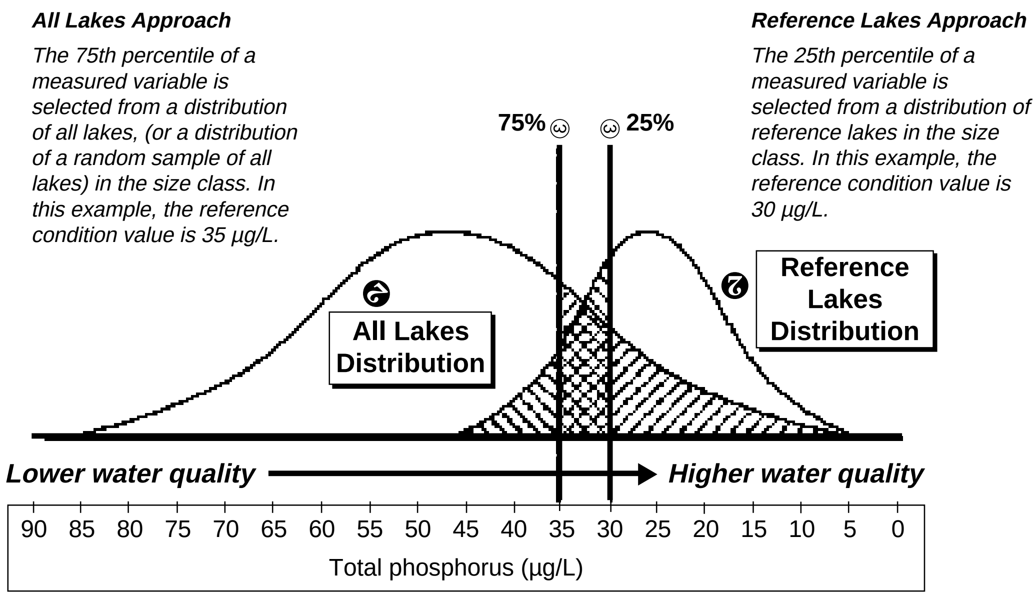
However, it should be noted that both the 25th percentile for reference lakes and the 75th to 95th percentile from a representative sample are general recommendations, and the actual distribution of the observations will be a major determinant of the threshold point chosen.

Figure 7.1 shows both options and illustrates the presumption that, all else being equal, these two alternative methods should approach a common reference condition along a continuum of data points. In this illustration, the 25th percentile of the collection of reference lakes produces a TP reference condition of 30 µg/L. The 75th percentile of the random sample of lakes produces a value of 35 µg/L.

Because there is little distinction in this case, the Agency may select either 30 µg/L, 35 µg/L, or the intermediate 33 µg/L value which is selected for purposes of illustration in this manual. Each State or Tribe should similarly calculate its reference condition using both approaches at first to determine which method is most protective. Then they should use that approach for their subsequent reference condition calculations.

In most instances EPA will calculate Regional Nutrient Criteria reference conditions by first subdividing of the dataset into size classes of lakes. These subdivided data will then be

Figure 7.1: Two Approaches for Finding a Reference Condition Value for Phosphorus



Note: Percentiles are based on order statistics, statistics derived from ordering data from low to high or high to low. In the case of phosphorus, higher concentrations of total phosphorus result in lower water quality. Consequently, the phosphorus scale presented above is ordered from high to low. A similar analysis of Secchi disk depth, for example, would require ordering the data from low to high because higher Secchi disk readings are associated with higher water quality. In all cases, finding the 75th percentile for the "all lakes" distribution and the 25th percentile for the "reference lakes" distribution requires the analyst to order the measured variable data in the direction that describes the continuum from lower to higher water quality.

assessed to determine if further subdivision of the regional boundaries is necessary. If data tend to cluster within a nutrient ecoregion it may indicate the need for further refinement of those regional boundaries into subregions.

Once the regional boundaries are determined, a frequency distribution selection for each lake class per region or subregion is established at the seventy-fifth percentile level. This is because the available data cannot usually be assured of being all of reference condition quality. The data are obtained from a wide variety of sources with an equally wide array of documentation and quality assurance procedures. The Agency policy is to choose consistently high end percentiles to assure the protection of the majority of waters. This conservative effort, together with the consultation of the Regional Technical Assistance Group in determining these regional criteria, is designed to help protect against setting the regional criteria either too high or too low.

Another element that must also be considered in setting the reference conditions is where and when the data were gathered. If the sample size is large enough, the time of year the individual samples were taken may not matter; either all seasons will be represented or most of the data will cluster about an appropriate index season. Similarly, surface grab or depth selected samples, or composite samples may not matter if the diverse data set is large enough.

However, when these factors are significant, the most indicative time of the year should be used as the index period. Alternatively, criteria should be developed for each season of the year. Likewise, the depth and location of sampling in the lakes in question should be used which best reveals the presence and amount of nutrients in that system. This applies to both the measurement of causal and response variables. Once again, it is preferable to err on the side of the environment.

Once the reference condition is determined, the other four elements of criteria development should be incorporated in the process. First the reference condition should be compared to the historical information for that area. Are things getting generally better or worse than before? Model predictions not only fill the void when there is a lack of reference condition data, but predictive models cay help answer this trend question. All of this accumulated, diverse information requires careful and objective review by the RTAG specialists.

CASE STUDY

Data from Minnesota provide an example of how this technique might be applied to help determine appropriate reference conditions for an ecoregion. Though Minnesota's P criteria, which were eventually developed, were not established using the specific technique described in Chapter 7, it is instructive to see how the percentiles compare between a reference population and a random or preexisting database (as was the case in Minnesota). **Table 7.1** displays phosphorus concentration at the 75th percentile for a distribution of reference lakes and 25th percentile for the distribution of total assessed lakes for three ecoregions.

In the NLF, the 75th percentile of the reference lakes was slightly higher than the 25th percentile for the random population (note that the random population would include reference lakes as well in this instance). The P criteria for that region was set just above the 75th percentile for the reference lakes. In the NCHF ecoregion, the 75th percentile of the reference lakes was again higher than the 25th percentile for the random population. The p criteria for this region fell between these two values. In the highly agricultural WCBP the 75th percentile of the reference lakes was well above the random data set; however, the random data set is rather small and there is substantial overlap between the two data sets (i.e., 12 of 45 lakes in the random data set were reference lakes. In the case the P criteria was set below both values but was relatively close to the 25th percentile for the random data set. This analysis suggests that this technique may merit attention in those regions where there are both reference and larger random or preexisting data sets for the type of analysis.

Table 7.1: Finding Reference Condition Values for Phosphorus (µg/L) Concentration Based on Reference and Total Assessed Distributions By Ecoregion In Minnesota

Ecoregion	75th Percentile of Reference Lakes	25th Percentile of Total Assessed Lakes	P Criteria for Swimmable Use
Northern Lakes and Forests (NLF)	27 *(n=30)*	16 *(n=543)*	30
North Central Hardwood Forest (NCHF)	50 *(n=38)*	35 *(n=368)*	40
Western Corn Belt Plains (WCBP)	150 *(n=12)*	97 *(n=45)*	90

2. Evaluation by Regional Teams

These regional nutrient teams will be asked to review the preliminary material and determine if the candidate target values are appropriate for the States in that EPA Region. In either case, additional helpful data will be important to further calibrate the data set. Because the Regional teams will include State agency members, regional or local concerns should be able to be addressed in a timely manner. USEPA has developed a data compilation and quality assurance standard entry form, which will help in the data sorting process. Headquarters will also award grants/contracts as needed to States in order to help fill in data gaps through the establishment of data collection programs.

3. Refine ecoregion reference condition values

Newly collected data will be combined with existing information to refine the reference values for both the EPA regional reference conditions and the State or Tribal references as well. Grants/contracts will be awarded to States and Tribes via the Regional Coordinator to develop sufficient current databases, especially where information is lacking for particular water body types or geographic areas of the nutrient ecoregion.

4. Finalization of ecoregion reference condition values

Peer review of reference condition values will be conducted before these values are incorporated in the criteria to be developed. The reference condition as developed by EPA for a particular nutrient ecoregion or subregion must also include attention to the collective effort this value will have not only on the ecoregion lakes of concern, but also the effect on downstream waters both within and outside of the nutrient ecoregion or subregion.

Upon consideration of all of these factors, the initial reference condition, perhaps as modified, can be used to help establish an EPA Regional nutrient criterion. This criterion may then be adopted by a State or Tribe as the water quality standard or proposed for promulgation by EPA.

D. Establishment and Use of State Nutrient Criteria

Once regional nutrient criteria have been established by EPA, the States/Tribes may develop their nutrient criteria accordingly. If the State/Tribe has additional information and data which indicates a different value or set of values which they feel are more appropriate to support different criteria; they should prepare a defensible scientific argument as a "site specific" criteria modification. If approved by EPA, this value(s) can be incorporated. If no action is taken by the State or Tribe involved, EPA may promulgate criteria based on the regional values and best available supporting science at the time. These values will then be used as the nutrient criteria for that State or Tribe.

1. Designated Use Approaches

The Clean Water Act as amended (Pub. L. 92-500 (1972), 33 U.S.C. 1251, *et seq*.) requires all States to establish designated uses for their waters, Section 303(c). Designated uses are set by the State. EPA's interpretation of the Clean Water Act requires that wherever attainable, standards should provide for the protection and propagation of fish, shellfish, and wildlife and provide for recreation in and on the water (Section 101(a)). Other uses identified in the act include industrial, agricultural, and public water supply. However, no waters may be designated to be used as repositories for pollutants (see 40 CFR 131.10(a)). Each water body must have legally applicable criteria, or measures of appropriate water quality that protect and maintain the designated use of that water. It is therefore proper for States and Tribes to set nutrient criteria appropriate to each of their designated uses in so far as they meet or exceed the regional nutrient criteria for those classes of waters.

There are changes that begin to occur at points or in regions along the trophic continuum that could be used for state or tribal designated use criteria setting. **Table 7.2** illustrates some use-related problems that occur along the trophic spectrum for temperate U.S. lakes. It is important to note that the reference condition and derived criteria prevail. Designated use

Table 7.2: Changes in Lake Attributes According to Trophic State

TSI Value	SD (m)	TP (µg/L)	Attributes	Water Supply	Recreation	Fisheries
< 30	>8	<6	Oligotrophy: Clear water, oxygen throughout the year in the hypolimnion.			Salmonid fisheries dominate.
30 - 40	8 - 4	6-12	Hypolimnia of shallower lakes may become anoxic.			Salmonid fisheries in deep lakes.
40 - 50	4 - 2	12-24	Mesotrophy: Water moderately clear but increasing probability of hypolimnetic anoxia during summer.	Iron and manganese evident during the summer. THM precursors exceed 0.1 mg/L & turbidity >1 NTU.		Hypolimnetic anoxia results in loss of salmonids. Walleye may predominate.
55 TSI	Reference condition threshold for acceptable designated use criteria, equivalent to 30-35 µg/L TP					
50 - 60	2 - 1	24-48	Eutrophy: Anoxic hypolimnia, macrophyte problems possible	Iron, manganese, taste and odor problems worsen.		Warm-water fisheries only. Bass may be dominant.
60 - 70	0.5 - 1	48-96	Blue-green algae dominate, algal scums and macro-phyte problems.		Weeds, algal scums and low trans-parency discourage swimming and boating	
70 - 80	0.25 - 0.5	96-192	Hypereutrophy (light limited). Dense algae and macrophytes			
> 80	< 0.25	192-384	Algal scums, few macrophytes			Rough fish dominate, summer fish kills possible.

criteria are simply subdivisions of that initial, optimal condition. No designated use may be assumed to be in compliance if it fails to meet or exceed the regional criteria.

Discussed below are general guidelines for criteria setting associated with common and significant classes of designated uses.

(a) Outstanding Natural Resource Waters

Some waters of the State may require special criteria based on unique characteristics of that waterbody. Such characteristics might include undisturbed or unique watersheds which are markedly different from other watersheds in the state. In some states, naturally-formed lakes are a rarity and may need to be protected by criteria different from those used for reservoirs. Some lakes may include rare or endangered species of plants, invertebrates, or vertebrates that need to be protected. Such lakes are the very best of the reference set and are most in need of protection by a rigid State and Tribal policy of antidegradation.

(b) Aquatic Life Uses

Like fisheries, aquatic life uses are heavily dependent on the initial condition of the resource. Species will change as a function of trophic state and it may be difficult to defend why one species is necessarily “better” than another. The use of reference lakes and their accompanying biota is one measure that can be used to predict the species that should be expected in a region.

Few taxonomic groups have been observed over the entire trophic spectrum. The best known are those that have been used as trophic state indicators as these are known to change with trophic state. Of these perhaps the best, and oldest, indicator are the dipteran larvae of the family Chironomidae. The Chironomids were known to change drastically as a lake became anoxic and one of the first distinctions between oligotrophic (oxic hypolimnia) and eutrophic (anoxic hypolimnia) was the shift from a domination by Tanytarsus to one by Chironomus (Thienemann 1921).

Numerous algal groups are also known to change with trophic state. The dominance of blue-greens in eutrophic waters is perhaps the most notorious, but changes in diatoms are well-documented, perhaps if their frustules remain in the sediments. The paleolimnological record will help in setting the aquatic life criterion. Macrophytic plants are also known to change in density, location, morphology, and in species richness (see above).

Although our knowledge of the dynamics of change in the biota as a function of eutrophication requires further development, there is sufficient evidence that eutrophication will bring species changes. If a lake is managed for aquatic life use, then perhaps a preservationist attitude should be applied. Eutrophication will cause species to change in relative abundance and cause others to disappear. Nutrient enrichment is incompatible with the maintenance of a specific biota. The ultimate extension of this concept is in the use classification of Outstanding Natural Resource Waters.

(c) Drinking Water

It has only been in the past decade that the full realization of the effect of eutrophication has on drinking water (Cooke and Carlson, 1989). For years the drinking water industry has recognized the effect of certain species of algae on taste and odor. However, trihalomethanes and other chlorinated by-products also become connected with the effects of eutrophication (Palmstrom et al. 1988). It is now recognized that as a lake eutrophies, the species of algae will shift to those that affect taste and odor and these species will increase in density and therefore increasingly affect the raw water quality. Turbidity will increase as the algae become more dense. Chlorination by-products will increase as algae increase. Hypolimnetic anoxia will increase the problems of iron and manganese control.

The reality is that drinking water plants must deliver a safe and drinkable product and as the effects of eutrophication are seen in the raw water, the cost of treatment must increase as well. Unfiltered systems must give way to filtered water, then powdered carbon and finally activated carbon. The run times of filters and of GAC filters decrease with increased algal densities. In short, eutrophication dramatically changes the cost and even the treatment process itself.

Several points along the trophic state continuum are relevant for drinking water supplies. The first is at a TSI of 40 to 50, when the hypolimnion becomes anoxic. This is when iron and manganese problems would first be evident. At a TSI of 50, the turbidity of the water might be expected to exceed 1 NTU and filtration of the raw water would become necessary. It is at a TSI of 50 that Arruda (1988) found that trihalomethane concentrations in the finished water exceeds 100 mg/L in some Kansas treatment plants. Therefore it is at this trophic state that extra measures or a change in treatment process is necessary to control taste and odor without increasing the chlorine dose.

(d) Recreation

• *Swimming/Primary Contact Recreation*

Criteria setting based on contact recreation may be associated with the occurrence (or appearance) of certain phenomena which affect certain types of recreation. For example, swimmers generally may not be affected by the trophic state of the lake but resulting changes in transparency or change in species may be important. Some states and countries have prohibitions on swimming based on the depth that a body could be seen on the bottom. This consideration is based on the possibility of seeing a drowning child. New Zealand has a swimming prohibition on transparencies of less than 1.5 meters (Smith et al. 1991) and several states have prohibitions based on transparencies of two or three feet. These transparencies would be equivalent to a Trophic State Index (Carlson, 1977) value of approximately 60 which, if transparency is related to phosphorus, to a total phosphorus value of 45-50 µg/L. The density or frequency of algal scums might also discourage swimming. Since scums are often the result of dense populations of blue-green algae, then their frequency and density might be expected to increase as a lake becomes enriched.

• *Boating and Secondary Contact Recreation*

It might be expected that the transparency of the water or the presence of algal scums would not deter boating, unless water skiing were involved. However, boating may be affected by the presence of dense beds of tall or floating macrophytes. Little has been done on the relationship of macrophyte type and trophic state, but a paper by Swindale and Curtis (1957) suggests that the dominance taller plant forms increase as the conductivity of Wisconsin lakes increases. Since conductivity has been related to the background levels of nutrients in the water, a rough approximation would suggest that the trophic state where taller plants predominate would have a transparency of approximately 0.5 meters, or a TSI of 70 (TP = 98 ug/L).

(e) Fisheries

Developing criteria based on fishing may be somewhat difficult because fish species change as trophic state changes (Oglesby, et al. 1987), and therefore different fishermen might be pleased or angry with each change in trophic state. For example, salmonids will be dominant in waters with hypolimnetic oxygen, but will diminish as hypolimnetic anoxia develops (*See Figure 5.2*). This shift to a warm water fishery may disappoint lake trout fishermen but delight walleye or perch fishermen. Even carp and bullheads, which dominate the hypereutrophic waters, will have their advocates. It may be that anti-degradation criteria could be established at the points of transition between dominant fish groups. Based on the work of Oglesby, et al. 1987, the following general values (based on the available hypolimnetic DO response) might be suggested:

<TSI 40-50	TP = <24 ug/L	Salmonid fishery
TSI 50 -60	TP = 24-48 ug/L	Percid fishery
TSI 60-80	TP = 48-192 ug/L	Centrarchid fishery
>TSI 70-80	TP = >192	Cyprinid fishery

Such a fishery categorization may present problems because some warm water fisheries would thrive in waters falling below the reference condition (i.e., 50 TSI). However, consultation with fisheries managers and the public through the water quality standards review process should help resolve the issue of robust fish in otherwise over-enriched waters.

Figure 7.2 is a general illustration of the establishment of a lake or reservoir nutrient criterion. It illustrates both the basic nutrient ecoregional criterion and the criteria development for each designated use category.

In this hypothetical illustration, (not applicable to any specific region), a water quality indicator such as total phosphorus has been evaluated by EPA Regional and Headquarters' specialists for all reference lakes in the EPA Nutrient Program data set for that particular nutrient ecoregion or subregion. The distribution of the data has been assessed, and a percentile of this distribution has been chosen as an ecoregional criterion for total phosphorus. The percentile should always strive to be 75 percent or greater to ensure sufficient protection of water quality when based on the various data sources available to the program. In this hypothetical instance, assume the seventy-fifth percentile distribution of reference lake phosphorus concentrations is equivalent to 33 ug per liter (see Figure 7.1 and **Figure 7.3**).

Calculations of these ecoregional criteria are done by the EPA National Nutrient Program in conjunction with the appropriate EPA Regional Technical Advisory Groups. The supporting data are obtained from federal, state, and academic agencies and institutions in the region; all of which becomes part of the national nutrient data base. In establishing these regional criteria, EPA relies upon the same five elements of criteria development described earlier for State and Tribal use (e.g., historical records, present reference site data, models if appropriate, regional expert interpretations, and consideration for downstream impacts).

The ecoregional criteria described in this manual are expected to be in part predicated on an average of reference condition data gathered from at least high and low flow conditions, if not from year-round data. This is to make the process as straight forward and simple as possible while also having consistent application of the methodology to all parts of the country, even those with seasonal variation.

Figure 7.2: Designated Use Box Plots

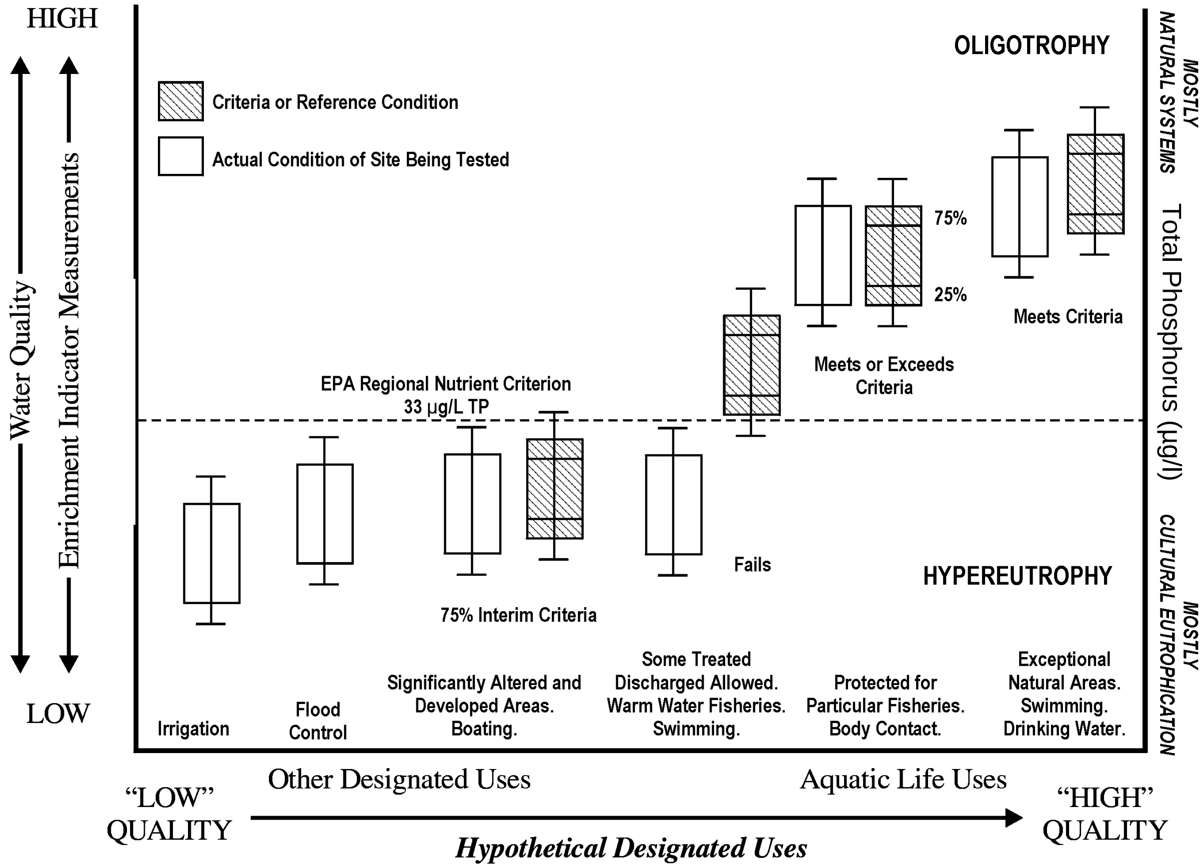
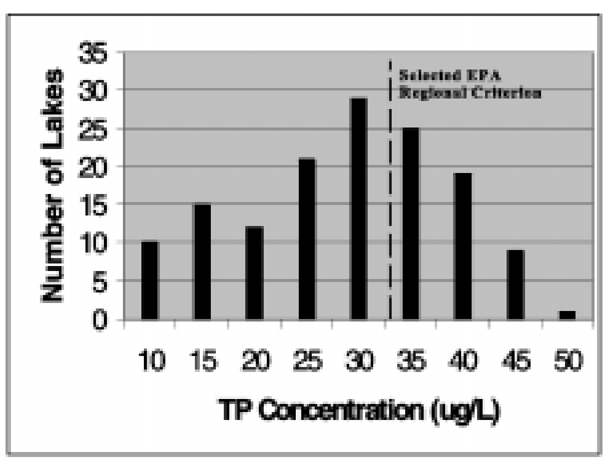


Figure 7.3: Development of a Regional Criterion by EPA from a Regional Nutrient Data Set



However, it is evident that this approach may create a windfall gap between the criteria values and seasonally selected measurements in some localities. This would be analogous to conducting a perk test for a septic system in mid August, which would have very little bearing on the performance of the system during rainy April weather. States correct for this problem by setting their required test infiltration rates on a seasonal basis. Similarly, when large seasonal disparities exist in the reference data, the RTAG should set two or more seasonal criteria instead of using an average criterion for each variable. One of these seasonal criteria should be for the growing season in that region.

Sampling to evaluate compliance with the subsequent standards employing these criteria will have to be carefully defined to ensure that State or Tribal sampling is compatible with the procedures used to establish the criteria. If State or Tribal observations are averaged over the year, balanced sampling is essential and the average should not exceed the criterion. In addition, no more than ten percent of the observations contributing to that average value should exceed the criterion (see also section 7-E below).

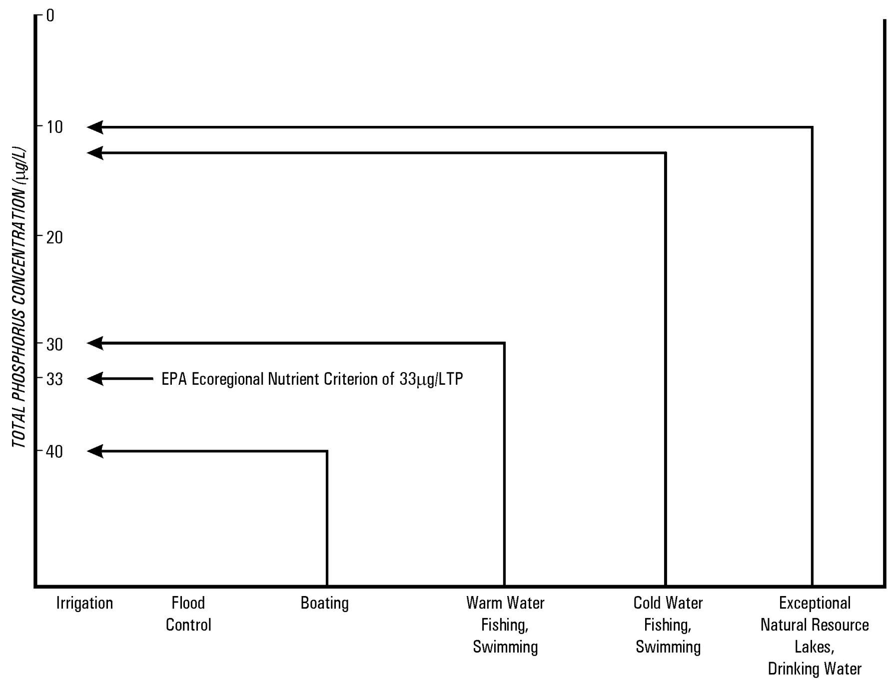
Once a regional criterion has been established and it is subject to periodic review and calibration, any State or Tribe in the region may elect to use it as the basis to develop its own criteria to protect designated uses for each class of lakes in the State. This is entirely appropriate so long as the criteria meet or exceed the basic EPA criterion for that region. This ecoregional criterion represents EPA's "304(a)" recommendation for protection of an aquatic life use.

Using this initial benchmark, the State or Tribe may then proceed to classify its lakes first by size and other physical characteristics, and then further subclassified by designated uses.

For each designated use class within the physical classifications, a set of reference lakes are again identified and the range of their concentrations plotted just as done for the EPA regional criteria calculations. In this instance, the State may, if the data are known to be from all high quality lakes, select a lower percentile (25 percent is recommended) of the distribution as the candidate criterion. If reference lakes are not available and the overall distribution of the lakes or a sample of the lakes is used instead, then the percentile should be higher (75 percent or greater) [see also Chapter 1]. The box plots in Figure 7.2 represent the distribution of observations used by the State or Tribe to establish the reference data (shaded) and the temporal range of values for any particular test lake or reservoir being compared to the criterion (unshaded boxes). The reader should bear in mind that the reference condition alone does not constitute the criterion. It must be objectively assessed within an historical perspective and address downstream conditions before the criterion value is finally established.

When this process is completed, the figure can be simplified to show a series of criteria based first on the common physical similarity of the water bodies (they are in the same classification (e.g., same ecoregion, same size range and average depth), and next on their sub classification by designated uses (**Figure 7.4**).

Figure 7.4: Hypothetical TP Criteria



2. Frequency Distribution Approaches

The first approach to criteria setting might be to erect some sort of mathematical division of the trophic state continuum. The method that is used may depend on the goals of the individual state; some may wish to set criteria to encourage all state lakes to be preserved or to be restored towards the reference conditions; others might consider the designated uses as the appropriate goals for the criteria.

The common characteristic of the frequency distribution approach is that it is data dependent. Goals or criteria will be usually based on the data of the lakes themselves. This allows the construction of criteria based on the actual situation for the individual state or region. The establishment of nutrient criteria (much like establishing grades to reflect performance in education) requires both basic values or thresholds of expected accomplishment as well as sufficient flexibility to accommodate the uniqueness of each class. In this way, optimum performance is attained and the desired goal is reached.

The grading process based on an accepted standard of performance (e.g., 75 percent is a passing grade), is analogous to the EPA ecoregional criteria derived from the best information available from existing reference lakes, paleolimnology, historical information and data sets, and appropriate models. Conversely, establishing criteria for each designated aquatic life use in this manner compares to “grading on the curve,” where the data characteristics of each use set the curve.

The EPA regional criterion means that a minimum expectation is established to prevent any decline in performance. But above the “passing grade,” the individual State or Tribe may develop its own criteria in accordance with the characteristics and designated use classification of its lakes. In Figure 7.4, most of the designated use criteria meet or exceed the “passing grade.” [1]

In order to illustrate some frequency distribution approaches to criteria setting, we will use a portion of the EPA National Eutrophication Survey’s information (USEPA, 1975, 1978a, 1978b, 1978c). Let us assume that a state has collected chlorophyll data on all of the lakes in the state. The frequency distribution of the chlorophyll data is similar to that shown in **Figure 7.5 A**. Many limnological variables such as chlorophyll, Secchi depth, and nutrients exhibit non-normal distribution as is found in the NES data. In the present form, any estimate of central tendency such as the data mean would be highly affected by the extreme values. These types of data distributions are often transformed into a distribution more approximating the normal distribution by taking the logarithm of each value. In this case, the data were transformed into the trophic state index (TSI) of Carlson (1977) because that index also has a logarithmic transformation and facilitates putting the chlorophyll data into a familiar trophic state language. The results are shown in **Figure 7.5 B**.

It should be noted that while this illustration uses the Carlson TSI, other parameters or indices may also be appropriate. A simple alternative multivariable “enrichment index” is also presented for consideration.

(a) Two Divisions

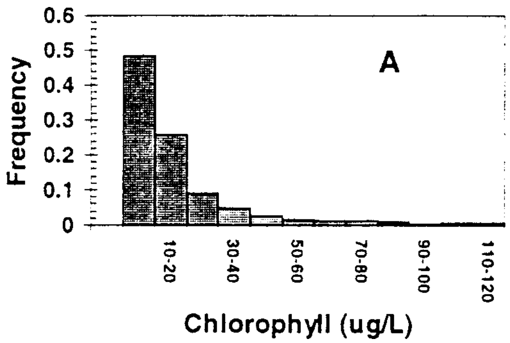
If one single line is drawn vertically through the data distribution at the equivalent of the 33µg/L TP (TSI of about 55) described earlier (**Figure 7.6**), then a criterion has been set. The difficulty obviously lies with where the line is drawn. If drawn to the left of the central tendency, then most lakes are out of compliance and significant restoration management is called for. If the line is drawn to the right of most of the lakes, then most lakes would be in compliance and far less effort would need to be expended in restoration. The establishment of a reference condition helps to set the position of that line as objectively as possible without conceding to a degraded condition. In Figure 7.7, the position of the vertical line has been set at 55 TSI, which is a potential candidate for representing the reference condition for this group of temperate lakes.

It is important to understand that any line drawn through the data has certain ramifications; those out of compliance on the right must be dealt with through restoration. The lakes to the left of the line should be protected, but may be a potential problem. The State or Tribe should have an anti-degradation policy that will ensure that these lakes cannot degrade past their present condition. They should not be allowed to increase in nutrient concentration until they reach the criterion line.

---

[1] EPA expects all States and Tribes to protect existing uses which may exceed regional nutrient criteria. RTAG’s will provide frequency distribution information from the Regional Criteria Database which may be used to develop these more stringent criteria (e.g., to protect cold water fisheries).

Figure 7.5: Frequency Distribution of Chlorophyll Data from the National Eutrophication Survey, (A) Untransformed and (B) Log Transformed into Carlson's Trophic State Index Value



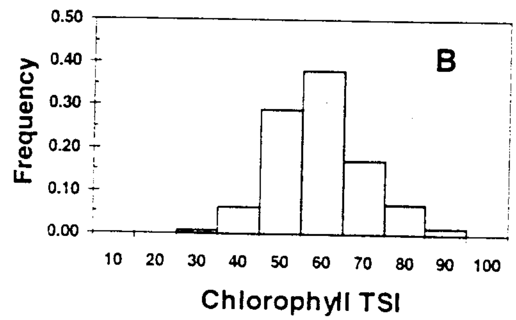
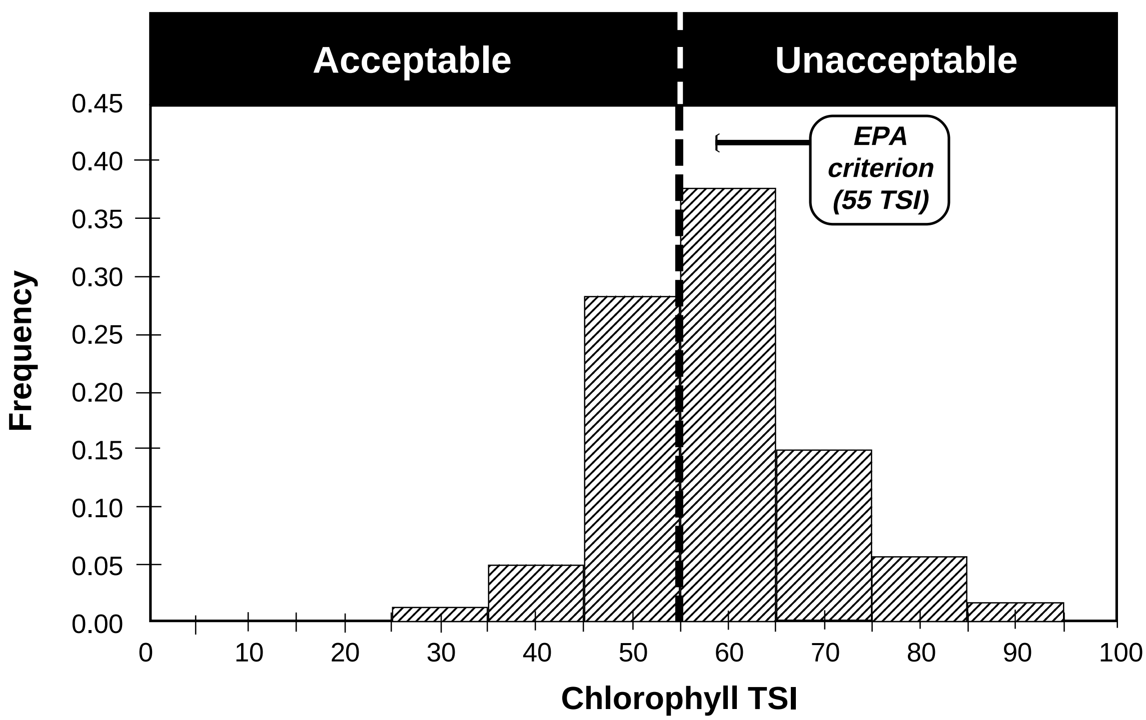
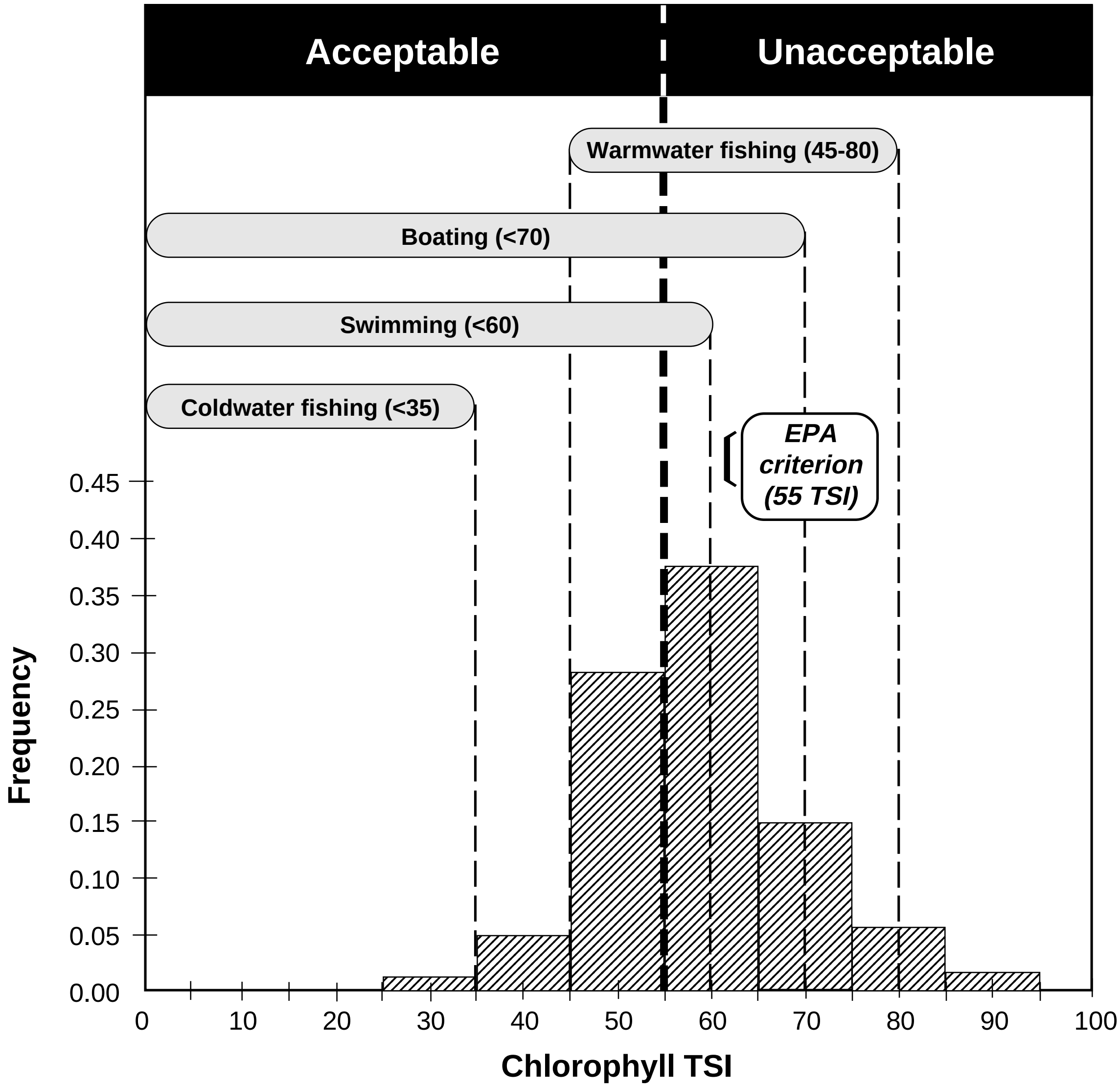


Figure 7.6: Illustration of the Use of a Single Division Line for Criteria Setting



"Acceptable" indicates consistency with the EPA ecoregional criterion of 33 µg/L TP, which equates to a TSI of 55 in the temperate United States

Figure 7.7: Overlay of designated use categories onto the chlorophyll frequency distribution



The higher portions of the swimming, boating, and warmwater fishing designated uses are subject to reconsideration or justification because they do not meet the regional criteria of 55 TSI.

(b) More than Two Divisions

It is possible to divide the frequency distribution into more than two segments. Depending on what the sections are called, there may be a tendency to shift the emphasis from a management for the central tendency, as was possible with the two section criterion, to one of management towards the left. This is illustrated in **Figure 7.7**. In this case, high quality is associated with the left-hand lakes, with the least chlorophyll. The segments to the right are of an increasingly degraded condition. These types of divisions would tend to increase the emphasis on moving any lake to categories to the left of where they are initially.

In summary, frequency distributions can be used to aid in the setting of criteria. Their major advantages are that there is no necessity to know or refer to the actual condition of the lakes prior to setting criteria, and the criteria are based on and, in a sense, developed relative to the actual lakes in the region or state. The number of divisions used has major implications on the later management of the lakes. A single criterion forces the administrator into making decisions of the number of lakes that are going to be out of compliance with considerable ramifications from that decision. If the distribution is divided into three segments, the emphasis appears to be towards acceptance of the majority of the lakes as the norm for the region. This would minimize management for most lakes, and still lead to protection of the best lakes. If the distribution is divided into more than three segments, it is possible to provide management and protection for all lakes so that they do not move towards the right, at the same time promote restoration for all lakes by moving them to categories to the left.

E. Using Criteria to Assess Water Resource Attainment

However done, once criteria have been selected for each indicator variable, a procedural rule must be established. The four initial criteria variables include two causal variables (total nitrogen and total phosphorus) and two response variables (chlorophyll *a* and Secchi depth or a similar indicator of turbidity). Failure to meet either of the causal criteria should be sufficient to require remediation and usually the biological response, as measured by chlorophyll and Secchi depth, will follow the nutrient trend. However if the causal criteria are met, but some combination of response criteria are not met, then there must be some form of decision making protocol to resolve the issue of whether the lake in question meets the nutrient criteria or not. There are two suggested approaches to this:

1. Decision Making Rule

One is to establish a decision making rule equating all of the criteria. Such a rule might state: “Both TN and TP causal nutrient criteria must be met, and at least three out of five response criteria must be met for three out of four sampling events during the June through August survey period over two consecutive calendar years of sampling. No sampling events may be less than three weeks apart [to avoid clustering sampling activities near a particular flow condition or runoff event], and flow conditions must be recorded as well so that base flow and runoff events are evident and can be factored into the data assessment process.”

2. Multivariable Enrichment Index or Enrichment Index

The second option is to establish an index which accomplishes the same result by inserting the data into an equation which relates the multiple variables in a nondimensional comprehensive score much the way an index of biotic integrity (Karr, 1981) does. An example of an enrichment index approach is presented in Table 7.3.

If necessary, the scoring process can be weighted by seasons. Thus different emphasis can be given to the results of winter surveys as compared to summer surveys and year round work can be conducted if necessary or desired. For example, greater weight perhaps by a factor of two could be given to the primary response variables in winter for north temperate lakes because these variables would normally be expected to be improved at this time of year.

Table 7.3: An Example of an Enrichment Index Using an Hypothetical Lake

Variable	Criterion	HYPOTHETICAL LAKE: Mean measured value	HYPOTHETICAL LAKE: Enrichment Index (EI) Score *
Causal Variables			
Total P (mg/L)	≤ 0.020	0.048	5
Total N (mg/L)	≤ 0.250	0.502	5
Primary Response Variables			
Secchi depth (M)	≥1.0	0.6	3
Chlorophyll *a* (mg/L)	≤ 20	30	5
Macrophytes (% of phototrophic zone)	≤ 25	52	5
Algae (% bluegreens of spp. composition)	≤ 25	75	5
Secondary Response Variables			
Dissolved oxygen (mg/L in hypolimnion)	≥ 6.0	3.5	3
Fish kills (No. in last five years)	0	2	5
		Enrichment Index Value =**	**36**

* Each of the eight variables receives an EI score. The scoring procedure is: 0 = Meets criterion; 2 = Fails to meet criterion by 10%; 3 = Fails to meet criterion by 25%; 5 = Fails to meet criterion by 50% or more.

** Enrichment Index Value is the sum of the EI scores. The maximum score achievable is 40.

Similarly, the criteria for TP and TN might both be changed to lower concentrations for winter because not as much runoff or fertilizer applications are expected. In the example, the lake fails anyway because it failed either the criterion for TP or TN (in fact it failed both). With a score of 36 out of a possible 40, it is also a prime candidate for extensive remediation management.

Such enrichment index scores are not intended at this time to be surrogate nutrient criteria. It remains to be seen if this approach is sufficiently rigorous and scientifically defensible to be used in the development of standards or in a regulatory context.

However, like biological criteria index scores such as the Index of Biotic Integrity (IBI) the Enrichment Index may be a useful assessment tool. The merit of the index approach is that all lakes of a given classification can be rank ordered by score. This helps the resource manager plan the distribution of effort and funds over the entire resource base in one procedure.

To determine if nutrient criteria for an influent stream or river are adequate to protect receiving lake waters, a Vollenweider or similar load estimating model may be applied to the lake and the appropriate share of the load from that stream source back calculated to a criterion concentration. This approach to criteria determination may also be applied on a seasonal basis and should help States relate their stream reach criteria with their lake or estuarine criteria. It may also be particularly important where streams and rivers cross State lines to help coordinate separate State criteria.

F. Implementation of Nutrient Criteria in Water Quality Standards

Criteria, once developed and adopted into their water quality standards by a State or Tribe, are submitted to EPA for review and approval (see 40 CFR 131). EPA reviews the criteria (40 CFR 131.5) for consistency with the requirements of the Clean Water Act and with the 40 CFR 131.6, which requires that water quality criteria be sufficient to protect the designated use (40 CFR 131.6(c) and 40 CFR 131.11). The procedures for State/Tribal review and revision of water quality standards are found at 40 CFR 131.20. The procedures for EPA review and approval of water quality standards are found at 40 CFR 131.21. The procedures for EPA promulgation of water quality standards (upon disapproval of State/Tribal water quality standards), are found at 40 CFR 131.22. The Water Quality Standards Handbook (EPA, 1994) provides guidance for the implementation of these regulations.

Currently, 40 CFR 131.21 provides that such State and Tribal water quality standards are in effect upon adoption by the State or Tribe. EPA has 60 days to approve or 90 days to disapprove such water quality standards. State and Tribal water quality standards remain in effect, even if EPA disapproves them, until the State or Tribe revises them or EPA promulgates a federal rule to supersede them. EPA is proposing (FR 64: 37072, July 9, 1999) that such new and revised standards, if adopted after the effective date of the final rule, will not be used for Clean Water Act purposes until approved by EPA, unless they are more stringent than the standards previously in effect. The proposal also provides that standards in effect at the effective date of the new rule manu be used for Clean Water Act purposes, whether or not approved by EPA. The timing of this rulemaking is designed to comply with a settlement agreement requiring EPA to promulgate a final rule by April 1, 2000.

CHAPTER 8

A Procedural Approach to Management Response

Those lakes/reservoirs selected for management may be approached in a rational progression of actions beginning with a statement of their major problems or symptoms and progressing logically to a course of action and final assessment to determine the relative success of the effort. The following sequence of steps is one illustration of this management approach. States or communities are encouraged to adapt this technique to suit their particular needs and expectations. Where considerable information is already available, some of these steps may be unnecessary, but the methodology is presented here for consideration. Additional management information can be obtained from the Assessment and Watershed Protection Division, Office of Water, EPA Headquarters, Washington, DC.

A. Problem Identification

Data used during the preliminary nutrient criteria development process and the application of the criteria will present the resource manager with an image of the general status of a lake/reservoir which, obviously in this instance, has indicated a need for responsive action. The information associated with these efforts, however, usually only indicates a broad status condition, for example, high nutrient concentrations, algal blooms, fish kills, or low dissolved oxygen.

Available data should be carefully evaluated to tease out potential relationships with land use practices or recent changes in practices, fishing pressure, stocking or lack thereof; and particularly the review of this survey information with previous investigations to make a preliminary determination of anthropogenic cause(s) verses natural cycling of the lake or reservoir. Essentially, conduct a preliminary evaluation of the lake or reservoir data on hand and readily available to ascertain that it is indeed a problem of cultural over-enrichment; for which there are likely human induced causes; and that these sources can probably be addressed to the betterment of the waterbody and the public good.

B. Background Investigation

Given that the initial information reveals a viable management concern, it then becomes necessary and justifiable to gather as much background information as possible about the waterbody in question. There are three primary sources of such information:

1. Literature Searches

The initial effort here should be the “grey literature” (often internal regional State and Federal agency reports that provide specific information about that lake). Sources of such information include: natural resource and fisheries agencies, forestry services, water quality administrations, hydrologic and geologic survey offices, planing offices, multi-state or county commissions, and community or environmental groups.

A second source would be peer reviewed “professional literature” such as journals and related publications such as proceedings of conferences and symposiums may include specific studies of the lake or reservoir of concern. But there primary value will probably be the discussion of methods and techniques of investigation and management. As the management investigation progresses, these sources of information become more pertinent.

2. Questionnaires

In preparing a list of agencies from which reports may be solicited, the names of key personal contacts should also evolve. These are the biologists, chemists, specialists, academics and resource managers, and citizen activists most familiar with the lake(s) of concern. As the literature and baseline data are reviewed, particular questions should develop, the answers to which will provide a fuller understanding of the resource and lend direction to the investigation and eventual management plan. Particularly helpful will be an understanding of the historical antecedents of the present status of the lake or reservoir.

A standardized questionnaire can be prepared listing concerns such as the availability of any reports or data; any understanding of the history of development in the watershed, perhaps including industries, agricultural practices, or development and structures associated with the lake.

Particular episodes may be noted for comment in the questionnaire such as: fish kills, algal blooms, or spill events, and historical problems such as septic tank problems, agricultural runoff, erosion problems, or development concentrations.

All discharge sites such as: wastewater treatment plants, drains, concentrations of cottages with onsite waste water treatment, marinas, major road crossings, and tributaries potentially bearing loadings of sediments or nutrients.

Problem land use areas along shore should also be noted. Degraded wetlands, lobes of the lake or reservoir where blooms or fish kills regularly occur, or areas where aquatic macrophytes have recently expanded or contracted.

It is helpful to include a large, fairly detailed line drawing of the lake/reservoir and its watershed which the respondent may use to locate and identify particular observations.

If at all possible, the questionnaire should be limited to no more than two pages of questions including space for answers plus the line drawing. Questions should be direct and concise. Determine exactly what you wish to learn and ask questions specifically related to this information. Opportunities for “Additional Comments” should be restricted to one open question at the end of the questionnaire.

To get the best response to a questionnaire, the potential respondents should be called first to confirm the mailing list. They should be advised of the nature of the study and their cooperation then requested. Other potential respondents may also be identified through these calls. If a large survey is necessary, this preliminary step may not be possible. But most such regional inquiries are usually to no more than fifty specialists and the increased information is well worth the phone calls.

3. Interviews

By this point in the background investigation process, the key people to contact for detailed information should be evident. Their names will have come up in conversations and on reports and they will be the people providing the best responses on the questionnaires.

Other valuable contacts who may not have appeared before this are the USDA Cooperative Extension Service agents for the counties in which the lake/reservoir is situated, County Planners, and long term residents and fishermen of the area. Their anecdotal information can be invaluable and helps add perspective to other sources of data.

The basis for the interviews should be the assessment of the questionnaire data already gathered. The interviews should clarify and elaborate upon basic information generated by the questionnaire. It is also the means by which apparent contradictions in perceptions or observations may be at least partially resolved. It should be noted that many people are uncomfortable with recorded interviews; note taking is often a more complimentary and less intimidating way to record this information. In any case, immediately after each interview, a record of answers and observations should be prepared from the meeting while the memory and impressions of the interview are still fresh.

The compiled information from the background investigation will further clarify the initial problem statement. It should go a long way toward resolving any ambiguities about the dynamics of the lake/reservoir and the human community. And it should clearly define areas where more definitive, primary data collection is required in order to clearly understand the nutrient problems of that particular waterbody and provide direction for the subsequent management project.

C. Data Gathering and Diagnostic Monitoring

Data obtained during the nutrient criteria development process is the mainstay of the database to be prepared for any subsequent investigation. The intent of that survey was to develop a reasonable image of the status of the lake/reservoir. Diagnostic monitoring should expand upon that structure and extend the understanding from status of the resource to a diagnoses of causes of the over-enrichment. Where three reaches of a lake/reservoir may have been sampled and two identified as being of concern, now the tributaries and other higher order streams must be sampled to further reduce the area to locations of probable loadings. While earlier sampling was to portray the trophic state of the lake or reservoir, these sample sites should be directed specifically toward near shore areas of potential loadings, tributaries, and portions of the tributaries where loadings may originate.

Diagnostic monitoring supports the identification of water quality problems and helps to develop an appropriate management plan. General guidelines for conducting diagnostic monitoring are provided below:

- *Parameters to sample*

Diagnostic monitoring is conducted after nutrient criteria have been established. It might not be necessary, therefore, to sample some parameters that aren't related to the criteria.

Diagnostic sampling for nutrients requires an estimation of nutrient loading and sources. Major potential sources of nutrients (e.g., tributary streams, groundwater flow, runoff, illegal discharges, atmospheric deposition) should be identified, and sampled in such a way to obtain an estimate of annual loads from each source. For methods and design considerations, see Olem and Flock (eds.) (1990) and Wedepohl et al. (1990).

The variables and techniques employed in the preliminary survey should be reviewed for adequacy and either repeated or augmented. The manager should not eliminate the basis of the original classification by dropping any variables or stations at this point. To document potential success or failure of the subsequent management program will require “before” and “after” databases and the initial survey design should be modified only after careful consideration and due attention to reestablishing the baseline survey.

Flow measurement are also an essential part of this survey. If nutrient concentrations are to be meaningfully compared and loading estimates made, cross sectional areas and flow rates for all tributary streams and discharges must be included in the survey design. These measurements must be made or extrapolated each time water quality samples are collected. Without this information it will be difficult or impossible to assign priorities to various loading sources identified in the investigation.

- *Sampling Frequency*

Sampling frequency will increase for diagnostic monitoring because the sample population is now an individual lake. Sampling should occur repeatedly during the growing season to be able to precisely characterize individual lakes, as well as discharges and loadings. Statistical power analysis can be used to determine the appropriate sample size based on the purpose of the sampling and the acceptable error (refer to later chapter).

In addition to expanding the number of stations and parameters to accommodate diagnostic determinations, the survey design should address the temporal variable by sampling these stations during each season of the year at times calibrated to that particular climate and locale. Accommodation may need to be made for periods of base flow, maximum runoff, turnovers, periods of maximum and minimum productivity, and in some instances migratory patterns of fish or waterfowl. Seasonal changes in land use such as peak summer (and winter) vacation periods, agricultural applications and harvests in the watershed, and seasonal commercial or industrial activities should also be addressed.

To separate signals from seasonal noise, it may be necessary to gather survey data for two or more consecutive years before meaningful data assessments are made. Such assessments will require a robust statistical evaluation of the data and this element should be planned into the study design at the outset. As with the initial survey design, the preliminary statistical tools chosen may be carried into this subsequent design as well. Care should be taken to address the need for replicate sample collections to ensure representative sample design and confidence in the results to be obtained. Early inclusion of a skilled environmental statistician on the management team is advisable.

- *Sampling Location*

If turbidity, nutrients, and algae are known to be variable across the surface of a lake, then multiple sample sites are required. If gradients are known to occur, as in many large reservoirs, then sampling should be stratified by zones. For example, in a reservoir one could define the three reservoir zones (riverine, transitional, lacustrine) as sampling strata, and take two or more samples from each zone.

The exact number of sampling sites in a lake or lake zone is determined by the spatial variability of nutrients, turbidity, and chlorophyll; and the desired precision. In general, within a basin or reservoir zone, variation in time is larger than variation in space (Knowlton and

Jones, 1989). Thus, chlorophyll samples 2 weeks apart may differ by several fold, but samples on the same day 500 m apart are likely to differ much less. Depending on the questions being addressed in the investigation, spatially-composite samples may be more cost-effective than separate samples from several sites in a lake. See Olem and Flock (1990) and Wedepohl et al. (1990).

The design and placement of these sample stations will rely heavily on the land use information developed from the background investigation. The overall premise should be to bracket suspected sources of nutrient loadings in the tributaries and near bank areas so parcels can be either selected or eliminated as potential candidates for management attention.

D. Source Identification

The cumulative information gathered should now provide a clear image of the state of the lake or reservoir, the most likely sources of nutrient loadings or related degradation, and their relative contributions to the problem. It is important to note that this process reveals only local sources of the over-enrichment. Atmospheric deposition of nitrogen compounds and other broad scale impacts beyond the watershed scale are not specifically addressed and must be assumed as essentially an environmental constant. With all the risks this entails, it is probably not an undue assumption as such remediation is probably beyond the scope of most nutrient management projects employing this guidance.

The problems to be identified are likely to be as diverse as the geology, hydrology and land use practices of the lake/reservoir and watershed. Typical elements include: sediment resuspension and nutrient re-release, biotic imbalances affecting nutrient utilization by overfishing or stock mismanagement, discharge of excess nutrients directly to the lake or reservoir by waste water treatment plants or storm water runoff or failing septic systems, runoff from subdivisions, farms, logging operations, golf courses, and shopping centers. Other problems have included concentrations of migratory and resident waterfowl contributing to an excess of nutrients, removal or filling of bank areas and wetlands which intercepted nutrient runoff, herbicide applications which killed macrophytes and promoted nuisance algal blooms, and chronic low dissolved oxygen problems attendant to over-enrichment and vegetative imbalances.

Any combination of these *in situ* and land use problems are potential causes of the cumulative over-enrichment problem and management planning requires identifying first of all the loading sources and secondly of those sources, the ones which are most significant.

Proximity of a source to the lake or reservoir (or, in some cases, the ubiquitous nature of a source throughout the watershed such as subdivision or farm runoff), the relative loading estimate of that source, and the likelihood of successful remediation are the key factors in deciding which problem sources are priorities for inclusion in a management plan.

Loading estimation models such as those developed by Vollenweider and by Dillon and Rigler, the Reckhow-Simpson model, and BATHTUB by Walker are valuable for estimating the relative significance of various nutrient sources in the watershed with respect to the likely response of the lake. Chapter nine describes many of these models and their relative utility. Modeling permits the manager to try out various preliminary management scenarios and combinations of management techniques to estimate and their likely effectiveness. Some of these options for consideration in a lake nutrient management plan are discussed in the next step.

E. Management Practices for Nutrient Control

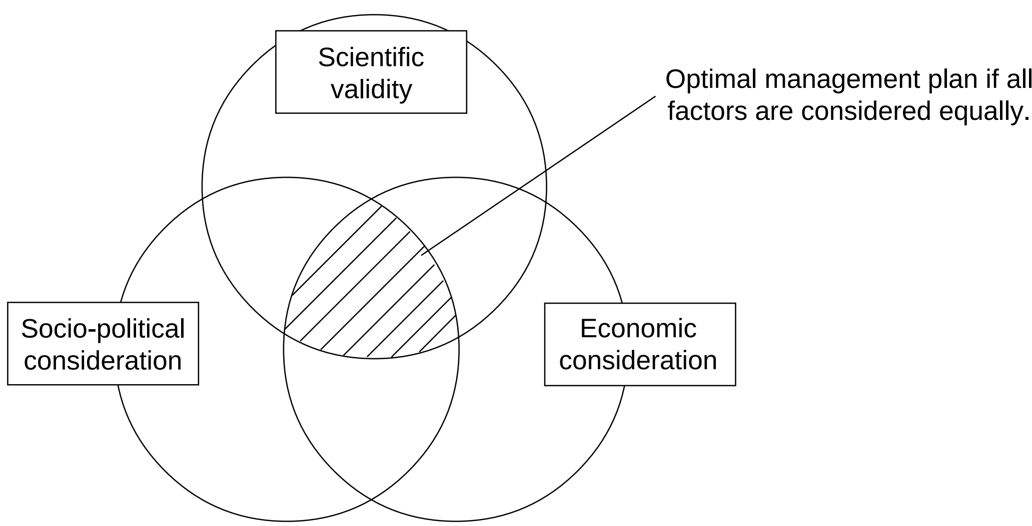
Once the major sources of concern are identified and agreed upon by the management planners, the remedial measures appropriate to these sources must be identified. Management Practices are well defined and documented for a variety of land uses in EPA guidance documents, USDA manuals, US Forest Service manuals, and urban land use planning guides. The resource manager should study these references for likely approaches to consider and then consult regional experts in each of the subject land uses for qualification and other suggested management practice recommendations. Bringing these specialists together as a small workgroup is an effective, although sometimes contentious, way to develop the most technically sound approaches to these chosen problems.

Fitting the various components together in a comprehensive management plan is challenging. It calls for both imagination and a sense of cooperation. Usually no one approach stands out as the obvious best choice. Instead two or three permutations of several generally agreed upon BMP's will evolve from the planning sessions.

Selection of the optimal approach, or more likely the best candidates, should first involve a careful assessment by the planning workgroup and then consultation with all elements of the watershed community, both organized interest groups and private landowners.

The first phase of this selection process should include review by a "three-fold framework" of evaluation. This approach was developed by the Department of Resource Development at Michigan State University (**Figure 8.1***)*

Figure 8.1: The "Three-fold Framework" of Evaluation



The premise behind this approach is essentially that an effective, responsible management plan should be able to meet three requirements of practicality:

- No resource or environmental management plan should be even considered unless it is scientifically valid. If the technology proposed is not based in sound science, has not been tested and validated, and is not established in peer reviewed literature, it should not be proposed. No attempt to manipulate the environment and peoples' land use prerogatives should be made unless it can demonstrated in advance that the technique is reliable, or at least that the risks are quantifiable and understandable.
- The approach proposed is cost effective and affordable by the community. EPA has a series of economic tests that can be applied to standards development which can be adapted to management planning for a similar result. But, as a first step; a benefit-cost analysis should be positive. The point here is that a plan which is technically sound must also be cost effective to be acceptable not only to bureaucratic decision makers but to most involved citizens.
- The management plan must have an adequate degree of social and political acceptability. That which is eminently rational and cost effective, still may not sit well with powerful vested interests, or may conflict with the conventional wisdom and collective values of most of the local public. This is particularly important if taxing or regulatory actions are part of the management plan. Any form of regulation or permit action should always be carefully researched through the responsible local, state and federal agencies as to the justification, efficacy, lead time required, and the likely effects on various segments of the community.

The manager who fails to consider and responsibly address each of these three elements does so at his or her own peril and jeopardizes the management plan. Conscientiously meeting all three prerequisites does not guarantee success, but it certainly increases the likelihood of it.

All candidate alternatives should be evaluated in this manner and revised as necessary. This not only generates the optimal plan (or plans where competing but different strengths are evident), but documents the rationale for that decision essential to public review before the final selection is made.

The involvement of the public in the process throughout is essential, and meetings or advisories to all potentially interested parties should be regularly provided, if not from the outset of the availability of definitive data, then certainly in advance of the time when plan selection and approval is needed. A balance in public information must be struck between too early announcements which may needlessly arouse people before sufficient information has been generated, and too late announcements which lead to suspicions of keeping them in the dark.

F. Detailed Management Plan

A detailed management plan should obviously include all ten steps of the process described here. The first five steps are necessary to get to the design of the plan, but they should also be included so anyone reading it will understand what has gone into the effort.

The Assessment and Watershed Protection Division of the Office of Water is the proper authroity for specific EPA recommended management practices and methods, but a few general observations are offered here. All natural resource management efforts can be reduced to three basic elements: education, financing, and regulation. Any resource management tool will fall into one of these broad categories and it is a good rule of thumb to try to initiate the various techniques in the same order as they are presented here. First the relatively low cost information and education efforts to make the people aware of the problem and how you propose to address it. And not coincidentally, to get their suggestions and perceptions of the issue and approach. Grants-in-aid or other assistance are often the key elements necessary to encourge individuals to adopt appropriate local lake protection practices. Regulatory actions should usually be brought to bear only after other efforts have been exhausted, unless there is blatent disregard for the law. Often the implied threat of such confrontation will induce cooperation.

G. Implementation and Communication

In addition to the discussion about communication above, the progress review periods during the management project are opportunities to provide reports to administrators, other involved agencies, politicians interested in the project, the general public and land owners, and other interest groups. Such reports should be brief and candid. They will be part of the public record so all parties are properly informed; help avoid the post-project cry of not being adequately advised of what was going on; and document the techniques and methods used for future consideration.

Regional public meetings and hearings are an excellent way to accomplish this communication. The more controversial an issue, the more this is necessary and the more important it is to listen carefully the responses and to objectively weigh the appropriate adjustments to the plan. To charge ahead in the face of significant opposition without evaluating the consequences is folly. This is especially true if a change to a step-wise approach in the management plan with additional public consultation would still achieve the same objective.

H. Evaluation Monitoring and Periodic Review

The management plan should always include “before”, “during”, and “after” water resource quality monitoring to demonstrate the relative response of the system to management efforts. This is why the initial survey stations should generally be maintained and expanded. Such monitoring data is important as a bench mark for evaluating progress and is an important component in the requisite progress reports described above. The change or lack thereof of the lake or reservoir is the ultimate determination of management success.

These built in monitoring schedules should include seasonality and periodic data assessment intervals for management review to permit responses to changing circumstances, modifications of methods, schedules, and changes of emphasis as needed.

I. Completion and Evaluation

Management projects are frequently planned, initiated, and concluded with new initiatives undertaken to meet pressing schedules without sufficiently evaluating what was or was not initially accomplished.

Review of the progress reports, review of the original objectives, and review of the monitoring data will reveal whether the lake or reservoir trophic state was successfully protected or improved. Just as importantly, this evaluation will provide the documentation necessary to determine if methods and techniques attempted in this instance can be applied, perhaps with modification, elsewhere. Alternatively, it will also reveal if mistakes were made which should be noted and avoided in future projects and perhaps that a sequel to this one is required to fully accomplish that which was intended.

J. Continued Monitoring of the System

The database initiated and expanded in the course of the project can now be reduced to the periodic measuring of key variables at critical times and locations. The purpose now is to keep sufficiently informed of the status of the lake or reservoir to ensure that the protection or remediation achieved is maintained. If periodic evaluation monitoring indicates a return of trophic decline, intervention should be possible at an early point so the costs of preserving that which was achieved are reduced. The evaluation and periodic monitoring steps of this process essentially close the loop. If new issues arise, the manager returns to step one with a new problem statement. General guidelines associated with evaluation monitoring are provided below.

1. Parameters to Sample

Each of the water quality parameters discussed in the Indicators chapter (i.e., total phosphorus, total nitrogen, chlorophyll, Secchi depth, and dissolved oxygen) should be sampled during maintenance monitoring. Because the purpose of maintenance monitoring is to determine if conditions change or if criteria are exceeded, other physical or chemical variables need not be measured.

2. Sampling Frequency

Sampling effort for maintenance monitoring can be adaptive and sequential, so that a certain minimum of information is collected at regular intervals, and if data indicate change or uncertainty, then the sampling effort (in both time and space) can be increased to attempt to reduce the uncertainty. For example, a lake in an undisturbed area could be sampled once every five years, from a single visit during an index period (say, spring turnover). If results suggest a change in lake conditions beyond what is normally expected for a lake of its class, then additional sampling of the lake can be continued to determine if the departure from “normal” conditions is real and if it is ecologically significant.

This also suggests different levels of maintenance monitoring, depending on existing knowledge on a lake and expectations. Maintenance monitoring may be done for several purposes:

- Routine monitoring of a lake of known quality (i.e., has been sampled before) that is not expected to change greatly;
- Initial sampling of a lake of unknown quality; or
- Monitoring of a lake of known quality that is expected to change, as with watershed development or following restoration efforts.

Routine monitoring of lakes of known quality is the least intensive, and would typically require sampling once every several years, as in the example above. Initial sampling of a lake of unknown quality requires the same sampling effort, and parameters, as the classification survey. Monitoring a known lake that is expected or suspected to change requires more intensive effort, typically an increase in sampling frequency to several times in the growing season to obtain seasonal averages of indicator values.

The actual frequency of sampling should be determined by the number of samples required to detect an ecologically relevant change in the indicators of a single lake, resources available for the monitoring program, and the amount of time for a change to be detected. These considerations require power analysis using existing or preliminary data (see Chapter__), and trade-offs of desired significance level, desired power, desired effect size that is detectable, ecological significance, and most important, resources (labor and money) available for the monitoring program.

3. Sampling Location

For routine monitoring, it is recommended that the sampling locations be the same as for the classification survey, whether a single mid-lake site, a spatially composite sample, or separate sampling sites within a lake.

K. Resources

Listed below are several publications concerning watershed protection.

- *Watershed Protection: A Project Focus* (EPA 841-R-95-003)

  This document focuses on developing watershed-specific programs or projects. It provides a blueprint for designing and implementing watershed projects including references and case studies for specific elements of the process. The document illustrates how the broader principles of watershed management--including all relevant federal, state, tribal, local and private activities--can be brought to bear on water quality and ecological concerns.

- *Watershed Protection: A Statewide Approach* (EPA841-R-95-004)

  This document was primarily designed for state water quality managers. A common framework for a statewide watershed approach focuses on organizing and managing by a state's major watersheds, which are called basins in this document. In this statewide approach, activities such as water quality monitoring, planning and permitting are coordinated on a set schedule within large watersheds or basins. Involvement of other natural resource agencies is actively sought to achieve water quality and ecosystem goals. Establishing good working relationships among the statewide framework participants, the managers in major basins, and local watershed efforts is crucial to making this approach work.

- *Monitoring Consortiums: A Cost-Effective Means to Enhancing Watershed Data Collection and Analysis* (EPA841-R-97-006)

  This document addresses coordination in watershed monitoring. Monitoring is absolutely essential to track overall watershed health and detect changes in any valued features or functions, but monitoring costs are often a limiting factor. As demonstrated in the document's four case studies, consortiums can stretch the monitoring dollar, improve cooperation among partners, and increase sharing of expertise as well as expenses of data collection and management.

- *Land Cover Digital Data Directory for the United States* (EPA841-B-97-005)

  Land cover, which is the pattern of ecological resources and human activities dominating different areas of the earth's surface, is one of the most important data sources used in watershed analysis and the management of water resources throughout the country. Yet, despite the high demand for land cover data, a single source of up-to-date, nationally consistent land cover mapping at moderate to high spatial detail is not available. In the absence of a single national data source, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's Office of Water has researched the availability of single-state and multi-state, moderately detailed land cover data sets across the country and compiled a summary description about each finding. The 75 summaries in this directory include contact information to assist readers who may want to acquire copies of the digital data for their own use. It should be noted, however, that this directory is not a centralized source for ordering and acquiring digital data; to obtain land cover data, readers must contact the reference given for each individual data set in the directory.

- *Designing an Information Management System for Watersheds* (EPA841-R-97-005)

  This document is an introduction to the information management responsibilities and challenges facing any watershed group. The document reviews the fundamentals of identifying information management needs, integrating different data bases, evaluating hardware and software options, and developing implementation plans.

- *Information Management for the Watershed Approach in the Pacific Northwest* (EPA841-R-97-004)

  This document centers on a series of interviews with leaders and key participants in the statewide watershed approach activities in the State of Washington. The document reviews Washington’s statewide watershed activities in case study fashion. Following this review, the document describes how a watershed information clearinghouse can serve multiple planning, information management and communication roles for watershed groups.

- *Inventory of Watershed Training Courses* (EPA 841-D-98-001)

  The Inventory provides one-page summaries of 180 watershed-related training courses offered by federal and state agencies, as well as resource professionals in the private sector. It was developed in response to a key action item listed in the Clean Water Action Plan that states “federal agencies will complete an inventory of watershed training programs. Relevant offerings will be promoted through the Watershed Academy and through other means as appropriate.” The Inventory contains course summaries that provide the reader enough information to determine their level of interest and who to contact for further information-much like a college course catalogue. The Inventory updates an earlier document entitled the “Watershed Academy Catalogue of Watershed Training Opportunities” published by EPA's Watershed Academy in 1997. If you have information on a watershed-related training course not included in this Inventory, please submit it to the Inventory by filling out a submittal form located in Appendix A, as the Inventory is updated periodically.

- *Statewide Watershed Management Facilitation* (EPA841-R-97-011)

  This document addresses statewide watershed management and the process of facilitating the development or reorientation of statewide watershed programs. In the past few years, many states have decided to create new statewide watershed management frameworks or reorient existing water programs along watershed lines. Many states have undergone this process with expert facilitation assistance from EPA. Part I of this document describes the facilitation process, and Part II summarizes the experiences of 13 states in statewide watershed management framework development and implementation.

- *Watershed Approach Framework* (EPA840-S-96-001)

  This publication revisits and updates EPA's vision for a watershed approach, first explained in a 1991 document entitled Watershed Protection Approach Framework. It describes watershed approaches as coordinating frameworks for environmental management that focus public and private efforts to address the highest priority problems within hydrologically-defined geographic areas, taking into consideration both ground and surface water flow. Although watershed approaches may vary, the guiding principles of partnerships, a geographic focus, and sound management techniques based on strong science always remain important. Local, state, tribal and EPA experiences in implementing these guiding principles are detailed throughout the publication.

- *Top 10 Watershed Lessons Learned* (EPA840-F-97-001)

  Watershed work has been going on for many years now and this 60 page document summarizes the "top" lessons that have been learned by watershed practitioners across the United States regarding what works and does not. Each lesson includes 2 or more case studies and key contacts and resources for more information. Over 100 practitioners were involved in its development and reviews by the target audience have been positive. Visit www.epa.gov/owow/lessons on the Internet or call 1-800-490-9198 to order a copy.

- *Catalog of Federal Funding Sources for Watershed Protection* (EPA841-B-97-008)

  Many sources of federal funding are available to support different aspects of watershed protection and specific types of local-level watershed projects. This document presents information on 52 federal funding sources (grants and loans) that may be used to fund a variety of watershed projects. The information on funding sources is organized into categories including coastal waters, conservation, economic development, education, environmental justice, fisheries, forestry, Indian tribes, mining, pollution prevention and wetlands.

- *Watershed Training Opportunities* (EPA841-B-98-001)

  This is a 22-page booklet developed to highlight watershed training opportunities offered by the U.S. EPA's Office of Water and the Watershed Academy. It includes descriptions of the four main activities of the Watershed Academy -- training courses, publications, watershed management facilitation services, and website -- and also covers training courses and educational materials on watersheds produced throughout the EPA Office of Water. Hard copy versions contain the most recent course schedules as an insert (for this information see Training Courses/Course Schedule on this website). You can read of the Watershed Training Opportunities online.

- *Stream Corridor Restoration: Principles, Processes and Practices.* (EPA841-R-98-900)

  This document is a practical reference manual and logical framework to help environmental managers recognize stream restoration needs and design and implement restoration projects. Part One of this 700-page, three-part document provides a technical background on the physical structure and function of stream corridors and the effects of disturbance. Part Two focuses on developing a restoration plan, including problem identification, goal development, and alternative selection. Part Three concerns applying restoration principles through analyzing corridor condition, restoration design, and implementation and management. The appendices summarize a variety of restoration practices and technical references. This document was developed by an interdisciplinary team of stream and watershed management specialists, hydrologists, engineers and others from EPA and 15 other federal agencies as well as private sector experts on restoration.

- *Protocol for Developing Nutrient TMDL's*. (In preparation)

  This TMDL protocol is being developed to provide users with an organizational framework for the TMDL development process for nutrients. It will assist with the development of rationale, science-based assessments and decisions to lead to assemblages of an understandable and justifiable TMDL.

CONTACT INFORMATION

For more information regarding specific elements of this manual, the reader is referred to the following EPA offices:

- *Nutrient Criteria Development*

  Health and Ecological Criteria Division, Office of Science and Technology, Office of Water. Tel: 202/260-3418

- *Watershed Management and TMDLs*

  Assessment and Watershed Protection Division, Office of Wetlands, Oceans, and Watersheds, Office of Water. Tel: 202/260-7040

- *Water Quality Standards*

  Standards and Applied Science Division, Office of Science and Technology, Office of Water. Tel: 202/260-1303

- *Water Permits*

  Permits Division, Office of Wastewater Management, Office of Water. Tel: 202/260-7413

- *Legal Issues*

  Water Law Division, Office of General Counsel. Tel: 202/260-7700

CHAPTER 9

Modeling Tools

A. Introduction

There are a variety of models available that are related to the assessment of nutrients in lakes and reservoirs. The use of models can include a wide range of applications from evaluating in-lake trophic conditions to estimating loading from an entire watershed. After providing a brief review of lake and reservoir modeling frameworks, this chapter focuses on two areas where modeling can be applied with regard to the development and management of nutrient criteria. The first area is the prediction or extrapolation of reference conditions, which are used as a basis for setting nutrient criteria (see Chapter 6). The second area deals with the use of models as tools for management in the watershed once nutrient criteria have been established and implemented (see Chapter 8). Readers are encouraged to consult the following references for more in-depth information on lake and reservoir modeling:

- Chapra, S. 1997. Surface Water-Quality Modeling. McGraw-Hill Publishers, Inc.
- Thomann, R.V. and J.A. Mueller. 1987. *Principles of Surface Water Quality Modeling and Control*. Harper & Row, New York.
- USEPA. 1990. *The Lake and Reservoir Restoration and Guidance Manual*. EPA-440/4-90-006. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, D.C.
- USEPA. 1997. *Compendium of Tools for Watershed Assessment and TMDL Development*. EPA841-b-97-006. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, D.C.

B. Review of Lake/Reservoir Eutrophication Modeling Frameworks

Modeling frameworks to simulate the impact of nutrients on the quality of standing waters can be divided into three general categories:

- Empirical Models
- Nutrient Budget/Mass Balance Models
- Nutrient Food-Chain Models

These are listed in order of increasing complexity and higher mechanistic definition. It should be stressed that higher complexity does not necessarily connote inherent superiority.

1. *Empirical Models*

Empirical models are graphical approaches based on measurements from many lakes and reservoirs. The pioneering work in this area was performed by Vollenweider (1968, 1979, 1974, 1976) and Dillon and Rigler (1974). Other investigators, notably Rast and Lee (1987) and Reckhow (1977), extended and broadened the approach.

Empirical models can be loosely divided into two categories: (1) phosphorus loading plots and (2) trophic parameter correlations. As depicted in **Figure 9.1**, phosphorus loading plots typically graph lakes on a two-dimensional space with the log of the areal phosphorus loading on the ordinate and the log of hydrogeometric parameters on the abscissa. For example, Figure 9.1 has the log of ratio of the lake's mean depth to its residence time as the abscissa. Lines are then superimposed to demarcate different trophic states. The plots can then be used to predict the trophic state of a lake based on its loading and hydrogeometry.

It should be noted that a number of investigators (e.g., Thomann, 1976; Chapra and Tarapchak, 1976; Vollenweider, 1976) have illustrated how such plots can be related to and derived from the simple phosphorus budget models to be described in the next section. Thus, aside from predicting trophic state, the plots can be structured to predict in-lake TP concentration as a function of loads.

Figure 9.1: Vollenweider's Loading Plot (1975)

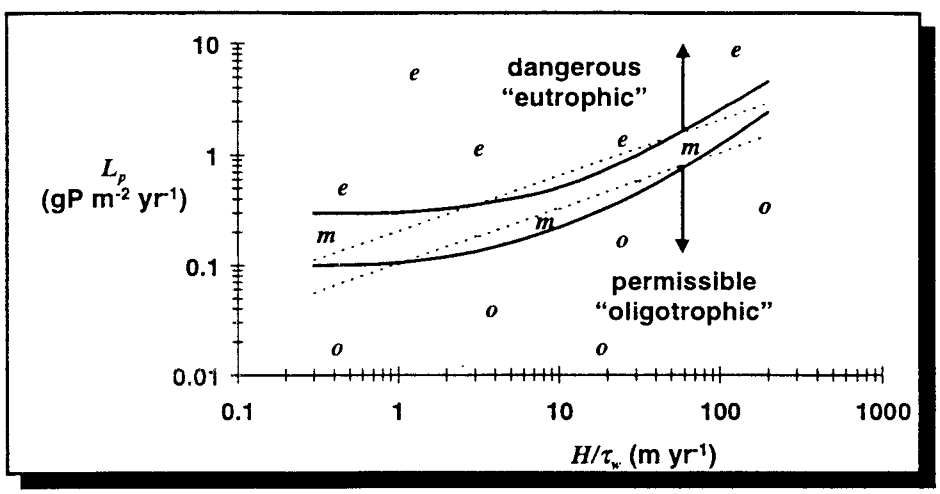
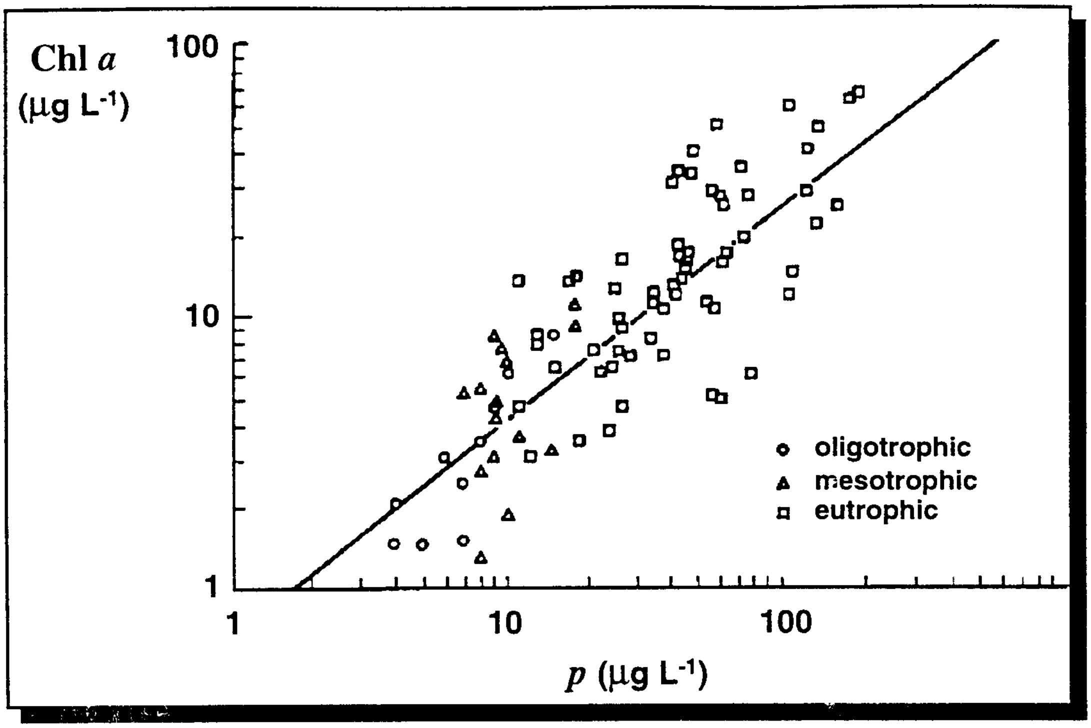


Figure 9.2: The Relationship Between Chlorophyll and Phosphorus in Some U.S. Lakes and Reservoirs



Trophic parameter correlations are usually log-log plots relating two trophic parameters. For example, **Figure 9.2** shows a correlation between chlorophyll *a* and TP concentration.

Empirical models have several strengths and weaknesses. Their strengths are:

- They are extremely easy to use.
- They provide a quick means to identify “outlier” lakes.
- If based on regional or local data bases of relatively homogeneous populations of lakes (e.g. lime lakes in northern Michigan), they are capable of producing adequate predictions.

Their primary weakness relates to the fact that, if based on global data (e.g., “North temperate lakes”), they tend to have very large standard errors of prediction. Unfortunately, the plots are often presented in a manner that does not make this uncertainty explicit. Hence, naive users can develop predictions and are unaware that their result may have a very substantial error. A number of investigators, notably Reckhow and Walker, have worked to have uncertainty estimates accompany empirical model predictions.

In summary, although they have some utility, empirical models (and particularly those based on global data) do not usually have the required precision upon which high-cost decisions can be made. As such they should be relegated to broad screening applications and for identifying atypical lakes. However, they may have sufficient precision if developed and applied for regional populations of lakes and reservoirs.

2. Nutrient Budget/Mass Balance Models

Early on (e.g., Vollenweider, 1969), it was recognized that simple mass-balance models could provide similar predictions to phosphorus loading plots. These models do not attempt a detailed characterization of the division of phosphorus within the water column. Rather, they focus of characterizing major inputs and outputs in order to predict the long-term trends of a lake's response to loading changes.

The simplest example of a TP budget model was developed by Vollenweider (1969, modified by Chapra, 1975),

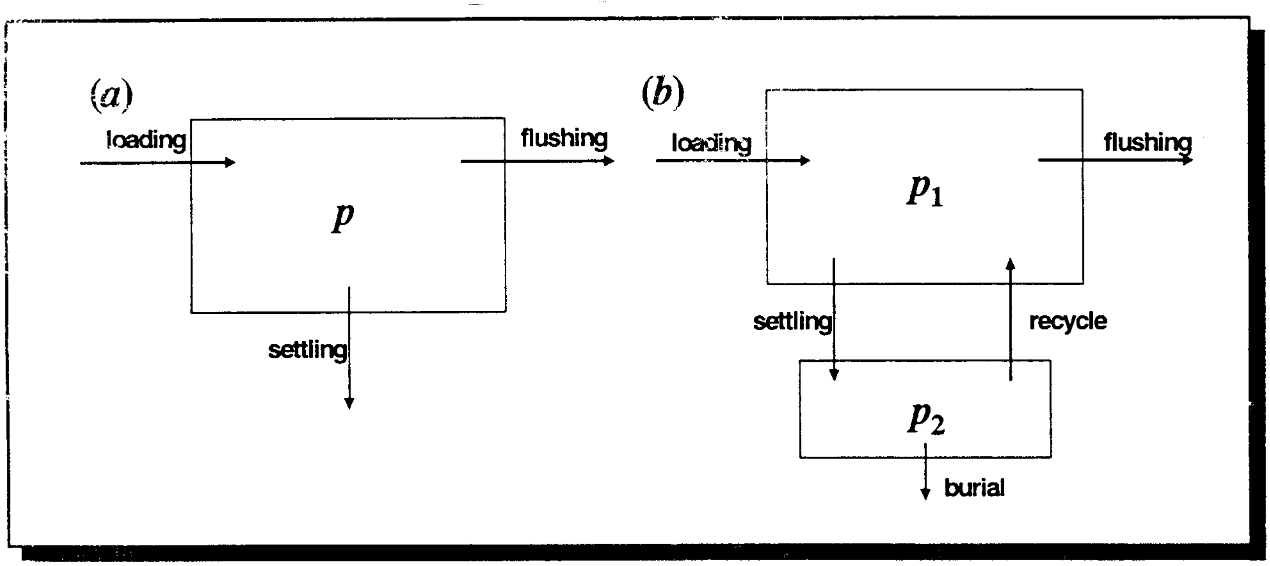
$$V \frac{dp}{dt} = W - Qp - vAp$$

where:

V = volume, p = TP concentration, t = time, W = loading, Q = outflow, v = an apparent settling velocity and A = surface area. As depicted in **Figure 9.3a**, the key feature of this model is the simple way in which it characterizes the input-output terms for total P. In particular, it attempts to characterize sedimentation losses as a simple one-way settling of TP.

As with loading plots, steady-state solutions can be developed by setting the derivative to zero and solving for p = W/(Q + vA). If levels of TP can be associated with trophic state, the model can be used to determine the loading required to maintain a particular lake at a desired quality in a fashion similar to the loading plots.

Figure 9.3: Two Phosphorus Budget Models, (a) Characterizes Sedimentation as a Simple One-Way Loss to the Sediments and (b) Includes Sediment Feedback



The model also provides a framework to determine the temporal response of a lake to loading changes. Thus, it has the advantage over loading plots in that system dynamics can be characterized.

Phosphorus budget models have been improved in several ways:

- For incompletely-mixed systems, the lake can be divided into a system of interconnected well-mixed systems. This can be done horizontally or vertically. For example, Chapra (1979) used two mass balances to characterize a lake with a major embayment. In a similar manner, O'Melia (1972) and others have vertically divided the water column of thermally-stratified lakes into a surface and bottom layers
- Efforts have been made to better characterize sediment-water interactions. Chapra and Canale represented a lake and its underlying sediments as a two-layer system (**Figure 9-3b**). Along with phosphorus settling, this model also allows sediment feedback. A simple oxygen model is used to simulate hypolimnetic anoxia which triggers sediment release of TP into the overlying waters. This mechanism is significant, because sediment feedback can retard the recovery of lakes after TP load reductions.
- Hybrid models have been developed that use mass balance and multiple segments to characterize transport, but use empirically-derived relationships to quantify kinetics. Walker's "Bathtub" model for reservoirs is a good representative of this type (see Box below).

In summary, the phosphorus budget models use simple mass balance to characterize how phosphorus levels change in lakes in response to load modifications. Thus, the assumption is made that "as goes phosphorus, so goes eutrophication." Such models can be useful for simulating the long-term trends in the quality of P-limited lakes and reservoirs.

3. Nutrient/Food Chain Models

In contrast to the budget models described in the previous section, nutrient/food-chain models attempt to mechanistically characterize the partitioning of matter within the lake on a seasonal time frame. These models were first developed in the 1970's to expressly address the impact of nutrients on natural waters (e.g., Chen, 1970; Chen and Orlob, 1975; Di Toro et al., 1971; Canale et al., 1974). They typically have a number of common characteristics including transport characterization and kinetic characterization.

(a) Transport Characterization

An effort is made to characterize the internal physics of a lake or reservoir. Thus, rather than representing the lake as a single well-mixed entity, multiple segments are typically used to model the internal physics. The most common approach is to use two vertical layers to characterize thermal stratification. More refined vertical segmentation is sometimes used to resolve hypolimnetic gradients, particularly near the sediment-water interface. In addition, multiple horizontal segments are employed for incompletely-mixed systems such as elongated reservoirs. There are two ways in which the magnitude of mixing and interflow between segments is modeled:

- First, it can be treated as a model input. This is done by specifying turbulent diffusion coefficients and inter-segment flows. In many such applications, the temperature distribution is also treated as a model input.

- Second, water motion can be calculated internally using energy and momentum balances. Thus, a separate hydrodynamic model is used to supply the physics. In some cases, temperature is calculated as a part of the hydrodynamic simulation.

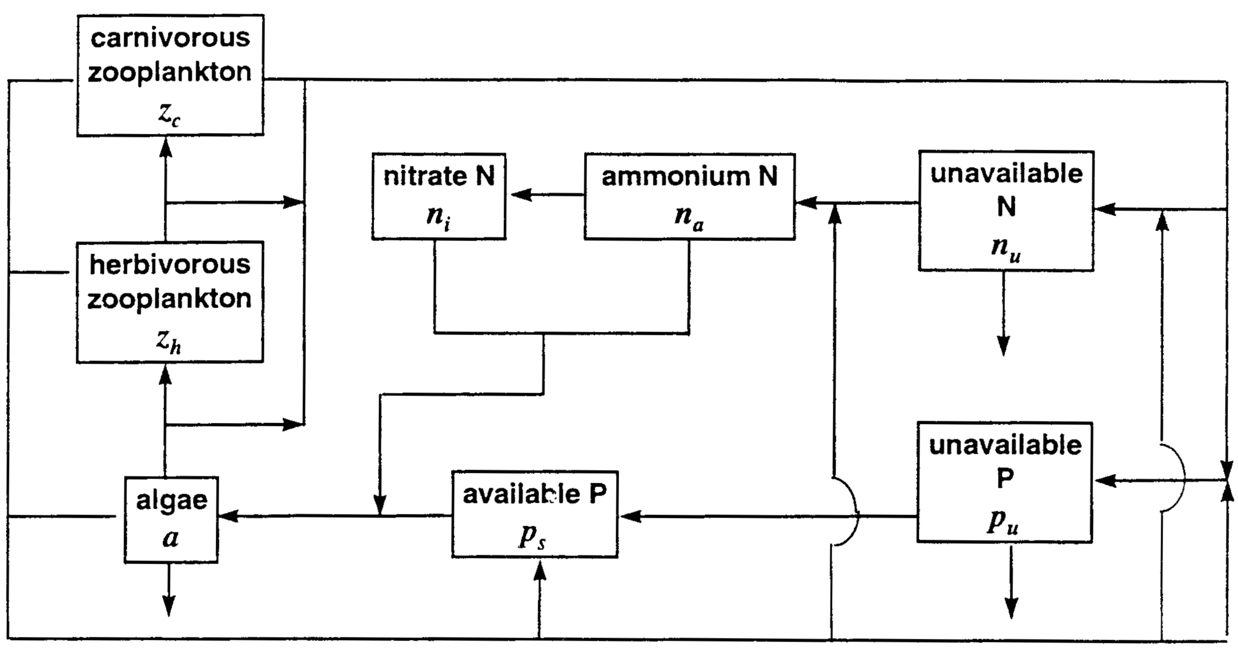
(b) Kinetic characterization

Matter in the lake is divided into several forms of nutrients and a food chain. A typical example of how this is done is shown in **Figure 9.4**. Several nutrients are typically included. Hence, the model is capable of simulating multiple nutrient limitation. As shown in the figure, phosphorus and nitrogen are the common choices. These are usually divided into available and unavailable components. The latter can be broken down further; for example, into dissolved and particulate fractions.

The food chain shown in the figure consists of a single algal compartment, along with two zooplankton compartments. Algae growth is calculated as a function of temperature, light and available nutrient concentrations. All other rates are temperature dependent. All three organisms experience respiration/excretion losses. As in the figure, these can be released to either the available or unavailable nutrient pools. Grazing is inefficient, with a fraction of the grazing egested to the unavailable pools.

This framework can be simplified by dropping a nutrient (usually nitrogen). It is more likely to be made more complicated by adding nutrients (e.g., silicon), or making them more refined (e.g., breaking the unavailable components into dissolved and particulate fractions). The food chain can be made more complex by breaking the single algal compartments into

Figure 9.4: Kinetic Segmentation



components (e.g., diatoms, greens and blue-greens). Similar refinements can be made to the zooplankton. When this is done feeding preferences must usually be specified. It should be noted that other variables such as oxygen and pH can be integrated into these frameworks. In these cases, it is usually necessary to simulate organic carbon.

C. Model Use for Aiding in the Establishment of Reference Conditions

1. Morphoedaphic Index (MEI)

The MEI is the ratio of total dissolved solids in lake water to the mean depth of the lake. Early studies suggested that the MEI was correlated with fish and phytoplankton production of lakes (e.g., Rawson 1951, Ryder 1961, Oglesby 1977). The MEI approach was extended by Vighi and Chiaudani (1985) to predict phosphorus concentrations resulting from natural, background loading in undisturbed watersheds. This prediction can, therefore, be used to predict reference phosphorus concentrations.

Using data from 53 cool-temperate lakes of North America and Europe, with negligible anthropogenic P input, Vighi and Chiaudani (1985) developed a regression equation predicting mean P concentration from the MEI, where MEI was calculated using either alkalinity or conductivity as a surrogate for total dissolved solids:

$$\text{Log [P]} = 1.48 + 0.33 \text{ Log MEI}_{alk}; \; r = 0.83$$

$$\text{Log [P]} = 0.75 + 0.27 \text{ Log MEI}_{cond}; \; r = 0.71.$$

Analysis of covariance showed no significant differences between the European and North American lakes, and lakes with known anthropogenic P inputs all fell above the estimated regression line for undisturbed lakes (Vighi and Chiaudani 1985). This MEI model is used by the Minnesota Pollution Control Agency (MPCA) to estimate background P concentrations and develop reference conditions for oligotrophic and mesotrophic lakes (see text box). Many Minnesota lakes are similar to the lakes for which the model was developed: relatively deep, cool-temperate lakes of glacial origin, which are oligotrophic to mesotrophic. The approach has not been calibrated or confirmed for shallow lakes, naturally eutrophic lakes, warm-temperate lakes, or impoundments. The MEI approach is simple and appears to be highly successful for a limited set of cool-temperate lakes, however, because its use has not been widespread (possibly because of its simplicity) it has not been calibrated and tested for a wider variety of lakes. This approach has potential, however, it needs to be recalibrated and tested with regional reference lake data sets.

2. Mass Balance Models with Loading Estimation

(a) Mass Balance Models

Mass Balance models are a means of estimating concentrations of nutrients using knowledge of loading into a lake and hydrology of a lake. A mass balance model by itself will not establish reference conditions — it will predict nutrient concentrations given certain loading values. Therefore, in order to use a mass-balance model to derive reference conditions for a lake, an estimate of the natural, background nutrient loading to the lake is required. In the most basic steady state mass balance phosphorus model, the equation for prediction of the concentration of phosphorus in a reservoir is produced by rearranging the mass balance equation (see Chapter 2) and solving for the concentration in the lake:

Concentration (Lake) = Concentration (Incoming Water) x Fraction NOT Sedimented

or

$C_L = C_I \times (1\text{-}R)$

C_L and C_I are concentrations of the material in the lake (L) and in the incoming water (I) and R is the amount retained in the water column. CI is usually calculated as the nutrient loading, J (mg/year) divided by the amount of water flowing out of the reservoir (m^3/year) in order to compensate for evaporation from the reservoir surface. The letter "R" represents the fraction of the material “retained” in the lake (i.e., sedimented). By subtracting the fraction sedimented from 1, the term “1-R” represents the fraction of the incoming concentration that can be found in the reservoir water (Dillon and Rigler, 1974). There are a number of methods for estimating (1-R), but one of the simplest, and yet one of the most consistently accurate, has been found to be:

$$(1 - R) = \frac{1}{1 + \check{s}T}$$

Where T is the water residence time (Vollenweider, 1976; Larsen and Mercier, 1976). This equation implies that the retention of materials in the reservoir increases the longer the water remains in the reservoir (as the water residence time increases). This makes intuitive sense because it means there is more time for the phosphorus to sediment out of the water column. The effect is that the longer the water residence time, the lower the expected phosphorus concentrations in the reservoir. This becomes especially significant because watershed development affects not only nutrient loading through increases in nutrient concentration, but also increases water flow into the reservoir, thus decreasing the water residence time and further increasing the in-reservoir phosphorus concentration.

The final predictive equation becomes:

$$C_L = C_I \frac{1}{1 + \check{s}\,T}$$

In the context of estimating reference conditions, models of this type can be used to estimate the potential pre-disturbance condition of the waterbody. The incoming concentration (C_I) does not necessarily have to represent the present or future concentration in the incoming stream. If there are undisturbed streams in the region, then the concentrations in those streams can be used instead to estimate the theoretical undisturbed condition. Some error would be introduced since water flow, and therefore the water residence time (T), may also be affected by disturbance; the estimated value would then underestimate the reference phosphorus condition.

(b) Receiving Water Models

Receiving water models are used to examine the interactions between loadings and response, evaluate loading capacities (LCs), and test various loading scenarios. As with watershed loading models, receiving water models vary widely in complexity. For traditional point source abatement, where biodegradable pollutant discharges are the major concern, simple, steady-state models of the dissolved oxygen (DO) balance are commonly used by planners and pollution control authorities. For assessment of eutrophication and toxics, more comprehensive models have evolved to incorporate a wider range of processes. Other recent reviews of receiving water models include Ambrose et al. (1995).

A fundamental concept for the analysis of receiving waterbody response to point and nonpoint source inputs is the principle of mass balance (or continuity). Receiving water models typically develop a mass balance for one or more interacting constituents, taking into account three factors: transport through the system, reactions within the system, and inputs into the system. The first factor describes the hydrologic and hydrodynamic regime of the water system; the second, the biological, chemical, and physical reactions that affect constituents; and the third, the inputs to or withdrawals from the system because of anthropogenic activities and natural phenomena (O'Conner et al., 1975). The complexity of a receiving water model depends on the way in which these three factors are incorporated. The simplest models use a steady-state, one-dimensional framework with steady inputs. The more complex models typically use hydrodynamic relationships, consider interactions between constituents, allow distributed nonpoint inputs, and are capable of providing dynamic, multidimensional simulations.

The various physical, chemical, and biological processes considered by a receiving water model are represented mathematically by mechanistic and/or empirical relationships between forcing functions and state variables (Jorgensen, 1989). Forcing functions are variables or functions of an external nature that are regarded in the model formulation as directly influencing the state of the receiving waterbody. Point and nonpoint source loadings to the waterbody are examples of forcing functions; other examples are temperature and solar radiation. State variables, such as DO and chlorophyll a concentrations, define the state of the receiving waterbody. When the predicted values of state variables change because of changes to forcing functions, the state variables are regarded as model outputs. In the context of TMDL development, the typical situation would involve manipulating forcing functions that are controllable (e.g., point source loadings and, to an extent, nonpoint source loadings) and observing the effect on state variables of interest.

Receiving water models are typically described in terms of their representation of space (spatial domain), time (temporal domain), flow simulation (hydrodynamics), transport processes, inputs (forcing functions), and state variables. Other factors considered in the review of receiving water models include user interface and inherent application complexity. Receiving water models can be generally grouped into three classes—hydrodynamic models, steady-state water quality models, and dynamic water quality models. Water quality models can simulate the chemical and biological processes that occur within a waterbody system based on external and internal inputs and reactions. Because steady-state water quality models are the most commonly used and the easiest to implement, a select few are described below. For more information on hydrodynamic models and dynamic water quality models, the reader is referred to USEPA, 1997).

- *Watershed and Lake Modeling Software (EUTROMOD)*

EUTROMOD is a spreadsheet-based modeling procedure for eutrophication management developed at Duke University and distributed by the North American Lake Management

Society (Reckhow, 1990). The steady-state modeling system allows for internal calculations of both nonpoint source loading and lake response. The system estimates nutrient loadings, various trophic state parameters, and trihalomethane concentrations in lake water. The computation algorithms used in EUTROMOD were developed based on statistical relationships and a continuously stirred tank reactor model. Model results include the most likely predicted phosphorus and nitrogen loading for the watershed and for each land use category. The model also determines the lake response to various pollution loading rates. The spreadsheet capabilities of the model allow graphical representations of the results and data export to other spreadsheet systems for statistical analyses. The model was used in conjunction with a GIS for establishing TMDLs to Wister Lake, Oklahoma (Hession et al., 1995).

- *Seasonal and Long-term Trends of Total Phosphorus and Oxygen in Stratified Lakes (PHOSMOD)*

PHOSMOD is a budget model that can predict the long-term response of a lake to changes in phosphorus loading (Chapra and Canale, 1991). In the model, the lake is treated as two layers: a water layer and a surface sediment layer. A total phosphorus budget for the water layer is developed with inputs from external loading and recycling from the sediments and considering losses due to flushing and settling. In the sediment layer budget, total phosphorus is gained by settling and lost by recycling and burial. The sediment-to-water recycling is dependent on the levels of sediment total phosphorus and hypolimnetic oxygen, with the concentration of the latter estimated with a semi-empirical model. Chapra and Canale (1991) present an application of the model and an analysis to demonstrate how the model predictions replicate in-lake changes not possible with simpler phosphorus budget models.

- *BATHTUB*

FLUX, PROFILE, and BATHTUB (Walker, 1986) are a collection of programs designed to assist in the data reduction and model implementation phases of eutrophication studies in lakes and reservoirs. FLUX is a tool for data reduction and preprocessing of tributary nutrient loadings from grab sampling and flow records. The program can assist in error detection and sampling program design. PROFILE provides displays of lake water quality data and assists in analysis of sampling information. Data analysis procedures include hypolimnetic oxygen depletion rates, spatial and temporal variability, and statistical summaries. BATHTUB allows the user to segment the lake into a hydraulic network. Nutrient balance and eutrophication models can be applied to the network to assess advection, dispersion, and nutrient sedimentation. Empirical relationships that have been calibrated and tested for reservoir applications are used to predict eutrophication-related water quality conditions. The segmented structure of BATHTUB allows its application to single reservoirs, partial reservoirs, networks of reservoirs, or collections of reservoirs, permitting regional comparative assessments of reservoir conditions, controlling factors, and model performance. Inputs and outputs can be expressed in probabilistic terms to account for limitations in input data and intrinsic model errors. The programs and models have been applied to U.S. Army Corps of Engineer reservoirs (Kennedy, 1995), as well as a number of other lakes and reservoirs. BATHTUB was recently cited as an effective tool for lake and reservoir water quality assessment and management, particularly where data are limited (Ernst et al., 1994).

(c) Simple Watershed Loading Models

Watershed-scale loading models are good choices to use to estimate nutrient loads entering lakes and reservoirs. For discussion purposes, watershed loading estimation methods can be divided into three general categories based on complexity, operation, time step, and simulation technique — simple methods, mid-range models, and detailed models (USEPA, 1997). Simple methods are the most suitable for aiding in the prediction of reference conditions. Mid-range and detailed watershed-scale loading models are more advantageous for watershed management applications as detailed below.

Simple methods are generally empirical in nature *[Jeroen - please verify.]* The major advantage of empirical methods is that they can provide a means of developing regional reference conditions with less effort and data requirements than more complex simulation models. These methods are compilations of expert judgment and empirical relationships between physiographic characteristics of the watershed and pollutant export, or they are estimates based on existing data. They are the most suitable models for developing regional reference conditions and making regional predictions, but they are the least suitable models for aiding watershed management and lake management decisions.

Typically, simple methods rely on large-scale aggregation, and neglect important features of small patches of land. They rely on generalized sources of information and therefore have low to medium requirements for site-specific data. Default values provided for these methods are derived from empirical relationships that are evaluated based on regional or site-specific data. The estimations are usually expressed as mean annual values. Simple methods provide aggregated (e.g., annual average) estimates of sediment and pollutant loadings, but have limited predictive capability for short-term loading or events. The empiricism contained in the models limits their transferability to other regions. Because they often neglect seasonal variability, simple methods might not be adequate to model short-term water quality problems for which specific loadings of shorter duration are important.

Pollutant loads are determined from export coefficients (e.g., the Watershed model) or as a function of the sediment yield (e.g., EPA screening procedures, SLOSS-PHOSPH). The Simple Method, the USGS regression method, and the FHWA model are statistically based approaches developed from past monitoring information. In general the application of empirical models is limited to the watershed types for which they were developed, with similar land uses or activities. Applications to new areas requires recalibration with relevant data.

Selected simple empirical watershed-scale loading models are described below (EPA 1997):

- *Reckhow-Simpson Model*

This approach (Reckhow and Simpson 1980) uses a simple mass balance model with empirical predictions of phosphorus loading rates from different land uses to predict mean lake phosphorus concentration. The mass-balance equation uses phosphorus loading, water loading, and an empirically derived settling velocity for phosphorus to estimate phosphorous concentration. Users must derive high, median, and low estimates of phosphorus export coefficients from agricultural, forest and urban land, as well as septic fields and precipitation. The high and low estimates are used to bracket uncertainty of the best estimate.

- *EPA Screening Procedures*

The EPA Screening Procedures, developed by the EPA Environmental Research Laboratory in Athens, Georgia, (McElroy et al., 1976; Mills, 1985) include methodologies to calculate pollutant loads from point and nonpoint sources, including atmospheric deposition, for preliminary assessment of water quality. The procedures consist of loading functions and simple empirical expressions relating nonpoint pollutant loads to other readily available parameters. Data required generally include information on land use/land cover, management practices, soils, and topography. Although these procedures are not coded into a computer program, several computer-based models have adapted the loading function concept to predict pollutant loadings. An advantage of this approach is the possibility of using readily available data as default values when site-specific information is lacking. Application of these procedures requires minimum personnel training and practically no calibration. However, application to large, complex watersheds should be limited to preplanning activities. Many of the techniques included in the manual were incorporated into current models such as GWLF.

- *USGS SPARROW Regression Approach*

The SPARROW regression is very similar to the storm runoff model (below), and is based on hydrologic unit-level discharge data from USGS gaging stations (Smith et al. 1997). The model was developed from nationwide data (414 stations for up to 15 years). The SPARROW approach considered four sources of total nitrogen and total phosphorus: point sources, fertilizer, livestock waste, and runoff from nonagricultural land. Atmospheric nitrogen deposition was also included in the nitrogen model (Smith et al. 1997). The model estimated land surface delivery (of nonpoint source runoff) and instream decay (denitrification or settlement) of the nutrients. A possible drawback of the approach for estimating reference conditions is that non-agricultural land uses were lumped as a single category (Smith et al. 1997). The model was developed from nationwide data; use of this method for extrapolation of regional reference conditions would require re-estimation and calibration using relevant regional data. While time-consuming and data-intensive, regional recalibration should result in more precise estimates than the national model.

- *The Simple Method*

The Simple Method is an empirical approach developed for estimating pollutant export from urban development sites in the Washington, DC, area (Schueler, 1987). It is used at the site-planning level to predict pollutant loadings under a variety of development scenarios. Its application is limited to small drainage areas of less than a square mile. Pollutant concentrations of phosphorus, nitrogen, chemical oxygen demand, biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), and metals are calculated from flow-weighted concentration values for new suburban areas, older urban areas, central business districts, hardwood forests, and urban highways. The method relies on the National Urban Runoff Program (NURP) data for default values (USEPA, 1983). A graphical relationship is used to determine the event mean sediment concentration based on readily available information. This method is not coded into a computer program but can be easily implemented with a hand-held calculator.

• *USGS Regression Approach*

The regression approach developed by USGS researchers is based on a statistical description of historic records of storm runoff responses on a watershed level (Tasker and Driver, 1988). This method may be used for rough preliminary calculations of annual pollutant loads when data and time are limited. Simple regression equations were developed using available monitoring data for pollutant discharges at 76 gaging stations in 20 states. Separate equations are given for 10 pollutants, including dissolved and total nutrients, chemical oxygen demand, and metals. Input data include drainage area, percent imperviousness, mean annual rainfall, general land use pattern, and mean minimum monthly temperature. Application of this method provides storm-mean pollutant loads and corresponding confidence intervals. The use of this method as a planning tool at a regional or watershed level might require preliminary calibration and verification with additional, more recent monitoring data.

• *Simplified Pollutant Yield Approach (SLOSS-PHOSPH)*

This method uses two simplified loading algorithms to evaluate soil erosion, sedimentation, and phosphorus transport from distributed watershed areas. The SLOSS algorithm provides estimates of sediment yield, whereas the PHOSPH algorithm uses a loading function to evaluate the amount of sediment-bound phosphorus. Application to watershed and subwatershed levels was developed by Tim et al. (1991) based on an integrated approach coupling these algorithms with the Virginia Geographical Information System (VirGIS). The approach was applied to the Nomini Creek watershed, Westmoreland County, Virginia, to target critical areas of nonpoint source pollution at the subwatershed level (USEPA, 1992c). In this application, analysis was limited to phosphorus loading; however, other pollutants for which input data or default values are available can be modeled in a similar fashion. The approach requires full-scale GIS capability and trained personnel.

• *Watershed*

Watershed is a spreadsheet model developed at the University of Wisconsin to calculate phosphorus loading from point sources, combined sewer overflows (CSOs), septic tanks, rural croplands, and other urban and rural sources. It can be used to evaluate the trade-offs between control of point and nonpoint sources (Walker et al., 1989). It uses an annual time step to calculate total pollution loads and to evaluate the cost-effectiveness of pollution control practices in terms of cost per unit load reduction. The program uses a series of worksheets to summarize watershed characteristics and to estimate pollutant loadings for uncontrolled and controlled conditions. Because of the simple formulation describing the various pollutant loading processes, the model can be applied using available default values with minimum calibration effort. Watershed was applied to study the trade-offs between controlling point and nonpoint sources in the Delavan Lake watershed in Wisconsin.

• *The Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) Model*

The FHWA's Office of Engineering and Highway Operations has developed a simple statistical spreadsheet procedure to estimate pollutant loading and impacts to streams and lakes that receive highway stormwater runoff (Federal Highway Administration, 1990). The procedure uses several worksheets to tabulate site characteristics and other input parameters, as well as to calculate runoff volumes, pollutant loads, and the magnitude and frequency of occurrence of instream pollutant concentrations. The FHWA model uses a set of default values for pollutant event-mean concentrations that depend on traffic volume and the rural or urban setting of the highway's pathway. The Federal Highway Administration uses this method to identify and quantify the constituents of highway runoff and their potential effects on receiving waters and to identify areas that might require controls.

- *Watershed Management Model (WMM)*

The Watershed Management Model was developed for the Florida Department of Environmental Regulation for watershed management planning and estimation of watershed pollutant loads (Camp, Dresser, and McKee, 1992). Pollutants simulated include nitrogen, phosphorus, lead, and zinc from point and nonpoint sources. The model is implemented in the Lotus 1-2-3 spreadsheet environment and will thus calculate standard statistics and produce plots and bar charts of results. Although it was developed to predict annual loadings, this model can be adapted to predict seasonal loads provided that seasonal event mean concentration data are available. In the absence of site-specific information, the event concentrations derived from the NURP surveys may be used as default values. The model includes computational components for stream and lake water quality analysis using simple transport and transformation formulations based on travel time. The WMM has been applied to several watersheds including the development of a master plan for Jacksonville, Florida, and the Part II estimation of watershed loadings for the NPDES permitting process. It has also been applied in Norfolk County, Virginia; to a Watershed Management Plan for North Carolina; to a wasteload allocation study for Lake Tohopekaliga, near Orlando, Florida; and for water quality planning in Austin, Texas (Pantalion et al., 1995).

D. Watershed Management Models

As watershed-based assessment and integrated analysis of point and nonpoint source pollution has become the focus of governmental water programs, modeling has been used to evaluate a wider range of pollutant generation, transport, control and environmental response issues (USEPA, 1997). Management goals such as pollutant source identification and prioritization, prediction and estimation of lake and reservoir response to watershed nutrient control practices, and long-term evaluation of a watershed system’s response to management efforts can be addressed using modeling techniques. This section discusses the use of watershed loading models and receiving water models for management purposes.

1. Mid-range Watershed Loading Models

The advantage of mid-range watershed-scale models is that they evaluate pollution sources and impacts over broad geographic scales and therefore can assist in defining target areas for pollution mitigation programs on a watershed basis. Several mid-range models are designed to interface with geographic information systems (GISs), which greatly facilitate parameter estimation. Greater reliance on site-specific data gives mid-range models a relatively broad range of regional applicability. However, the use of simplifying assumptions can limit the accuracy of their predictions to within about an order of magnitude (Dillaha, 1992) and can restrict their analysis to relative comparisons.

This class of model attempts a compromise between the empiricism of the simple methods and the complexity of detailed mechanistic models. Mid-range models use a management-level approach to assess pollutant sources and transport in watersheds by incorporating simplified relationships for the generation and transport of pollutants. Mid-range models, however, still retain responsiveness to management objectives and actions appropriate to watershed management planning (Clark et al., 1979). They are relatively simple and are intended to be used to identify problem areas within large drainage basins or to make preliminary, qualitative evaluations of BMP alternatives (Dillaha, 1992).

Unlike the simple methods, which are restricted to predictions of annual or storm loads, mid-range tools can be used to assess the seasonal or interannual variability of nonpoint source pollutant loadings and to assess long-term water quality trends. Also, they can be used to address land use patterns and landscape configurations in actual watersheds. They are based primarily on empirical relationships and default values. In addition, they typically require some site-specific data and calibration.

Mid-range models are designed to estimate the importance of pollutant contributions from multiple land uses and many individual source areas in a watershed. Thus, they can be used to target important areas of pollution generation and identify areas best suited for controls on a watershed basis. Moreover, the continuous simulation furnished by some of these models provides an analysis of the relative importance of sources for a range of storm events or conditions. In an effort to reduce complexity and data requirements, these models are often developed for specific applications. For instance, mid-range models can be designed for application to agricultural, urban, or mixed watersheds. Some mid-range models simplify the description of transport processes while emphasizing possible reductions available with controls; others simplify the description of control options and emphasize changes in concentrations as pollutants move through the watershed.

Because mid-range models attempt to use smaller time steps in order to represent seasonal variability, they require additional meteorologic data (e.g., daily weather data for the GWLF, hourly rainfall for SITEMAP). They also attempt to relate pollutant loadings to hydrologic (e.g., runoff) and erosion (e.g., sediment yield) processes. These models usually include adequate input-output features (e.g., AGNPS, GWLF), making applications easier to process. Several of these models (SITEMAP, Auto-QI) were developed in existing computing environments (e.g., Lotus 1-2-3) to make use of their built-in graphical and statistical capabilities. Neither the simple nor the mid-range models consider degradation and transformation processes, and few incorporate adequate representation of pollutant transport within and from the watershed. Although their applications might be limited to relative comparisons, they can often provide water quality managers with useful information for watershed-level planning decisions.

The following are descriptions of selected mid-range models:

- *Stormwater Intercept and Treatment Evaluation Model for Analysis and Planning (SITEMAP)*

SITEMAP, previously distributed under the name NPSMAP, is a dynamic simulation program that computes, tabulates, and displays daily runoff, pollutant loadings, infiltration, soil moisture, irrigation water demand, evapotranspiration, drainage to groundwater, and daily outflows, water and residual pollutant levels in retention basins or wetland systems (Omicron Associates, 1990). The model can be used to evaluate user-specified alternative control strategies, and it simulates stream segment load capacities (LCs) in an attempt to develop point source wasteload allocations (WLAs) and nonpoint source load allocations (LAs). Probability distributions for runoff and nutrient loadings can be calculated by the model based on either single-event or continuous simulations. The model can be applied in urban, agricultural, or complex watershed simulations. SITEMAP operates within the Lotus 1-2-3 programming environment and is capable of producing graphic output. Although this model requires a minimum calibration effort, it requires moderate effort to prepare input data files. The current version of the program considers only nutrient loading; sediment and other pollutants are not yet incorporated into the program. The model is easily interfaced with GIS (ARC/INFO) to facilitate preparation of land use files. SITEMAP has been applied as a component of a full watershed model to the Tualatin River basin for the Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, and to the Fairview Creek watershed for the Metropolitan Service District in Portland, Oregon.

- *Generalized Watershed Loading Functions (GWLF) Model*

The GWLF model was developed at Cornell University to assess the point and nonpoint loadings of nitrogen and phosphorus from urban and agricultural watersheds, including septic systems, and to evaluate the effectiveness of certain land use management practices (Haith et al., 1992). One advantage of this model is that it was written with the express purpose of requiring no calibration, making extensive use of default parameters. The GWLF model includes rainfall/runoff and erosion and sediment generation components, as well as total and dissolved nitrogen and phosphorus loadings. The current version of this model does not account for loadings of toxics and metals. The GWLF model uses daily time steps and allows analysis of annual and seasonal time series. The model also uses simple transport routing, based on the delivery ratio concept. In addition, simulation results can be used to identify and rank pollution sources and evaluate basinwide management programs and land use changes. The most recent update of the model incorporates a septic (on-site wastewater disposal) system component. The model also includes several reporting and graphical representations of simulation output to aid in interpretation of the results. This model was successfully tested on a medium-sized watershed in New York (Haith and Shoemaker, 1987). A version of the model with an enhanced user interface and linkages to national databases, WSM (Watershed Screening Model), has recently become available and is distributed with EPA's Office of Wetlands, Oceans and Watersheds (OWOW) Watershed Screening and Targeting Tool (WSTT).

- *Urban Catchment Model (P8-UCM)*

The P8-UCM program was developed for the Narragansett Bay Project to simulate the generation and transport of stormwater runoff pollutants in small urban catchments and to assess impacts of development on water quality, with minimum site-specific data. It includes several routines for evaluating the expected removal efficiency for particular site plans, selecting or siting best management practices (BMPs) necessary to achieve a specified level of pollutant removal, and comparing the relative changes in pollutant loads as a watershed develops (Palmstrom and Walker, 1990). Default input parameters can be derived from NURP data and are available as a function of land use, land cover, and soil properties. However, without calibration, the use of model results should be limited to relative comparisons. Spreadsheet-like menus and on-line help documentation make extensive user interface possible. On-screen graphical representations of output are developed for a better interpretation of simulation results. The model also includes components for performing monthly or cumulative frequency distributions for flows and pollutant loadings.

- *Automated Q-ILLUDAS (AUTO-QI)*

AUTO-QI is a watershed model developed by the Illinois State Water Survey to perform continuous simulations of stormwater runoff from pervious and impervious urban lands (Terstriep et al., 1990). It also allows the examination of storm events or storm sequence impacts on receiving water. Critical events are also identified by the model. However, hourly weather input data are required. Several pollutants, including nutrients, chemical oxygen demand, metals, and bacteria, can be analyzed simultaneously. This model also includes a component to evaluate the relative effectiveness of best management practices. An updated version of AUTO-QI, with an improved user interface and linkage to a geographic information system (ARC/INFO on PRIME computer), has been completed by the Illinois State Water Survey. This interface is provided to generate the necessary input files related to land use, soils, and control measures. AUTO-QI was verified on the Boneyard Creek in Champaign, Illinois, and applied to the Calumet and Little Rivers to determine annual pollutant loadings.

- *Agricultural Nonpoint Source Pollution Model (AGNPS)*

Developed by the USDA Agricultural Research Service, AGNPS addresses concerns related to the potential impacts of point and nonpoint source pollution on water quality (Young et al., 1989). It was designed to quantitatively estimate pollution loads from agricultural watersheds and to assess the relative effects of alternative management programs. The model simulates surface water runoff along with nutrient and sediment constituents associated with agricultural nonpoint sources, as well as point sources such as feedlots, wastewater treatment plants, and stream bank or gully erosion. The available version of AGNPS is event-based; however, a continuous version is under active development (Needham and Young, 1993). The structure of the model consists of a square grid cell system to represent the spatial distribution of watershed properties. This grid system allows the model to be connected to other software such as a GIS and digital elevation models (DEMs). This connectivity can facilitate the development of a number of the model's input parameters. Two new terrain-enhanced versions of the model— AGNPS-C, a contour-based version, and AGNPS-G, a grid-based version— have been developed to automatically generate the grid network and the required topographic parameters (Panuska et al., 1991). Vieux and Needham (1993) describe a GIS-based analysis of the sensitivity of AGNPS predictions to grid-cell size. Engel et al. (1993) present GRASS-based tools to assist with the preparation of model inputs and visualization and analysis of model results. Tim and Jolly (1994) used AGNPS with ARC/INFO to evaluate the effectiveness of several alternative management strategies in reducing sediment pollution in a 417-ha watershed in southern Iowa. The model also includes enhanced graphical representations of input and output information.

- *Source Loading and Management Model (SLAMM)*

The SLAMM model (Pitt, 1993) can identify pollutant sources and evaluate the effects of a number of different stormwater control practices on runoff. The model performs continuous mass balances for particulate and dissolved pollutants and runoff volumes. Runoff is calculated by a method developed by Pitt (1987) for small storm hydrology. Runoff is based on rainfall minus initial abstraction and infiltration and is calculated for both pervious and impervious areas. Triangular hydrographs, parameterized by a statistical approach, are used to simulate flow. Exponential buildup and rain wash-off and wind removal functions are used for pollutant loadings. Water and sediment from various source areas are tracked by source area as they are routed through various treatment devices. The program considers how particulates filter or settle out in control devices. Particulate removal is calculated based on the design characteristics of the basin or other removal device. Storage and overflow of devices are also considered. At the outfall locations, the characteristics of the source areas are used to determine pollutant loads in solid and dissolved phases. Loads from various source areas are summed. SLAMM has been used in conjunction with a receiving water quality model (HSPF) to examine the ultimate effects on urban runoff from Toronto for the Ontario Ministry of the Environment. SLAMM was also used to evaluate control options for controlling urban runoff in Madison, Wisconsin, using GIS information (Thum et al., 1990). The State of Wisconsin uses SLAMM as part of its Priority Watershed Program. It was used in Portland, Oregon, for a study evaluating CSOs.

2. Detailed Watershed Loading Models

Detailed models best represent the current understanding of watershed processes affecting pollution generation. Detailed models are best able to identify causes of problems rather than simply describing overall conditions. If properly applied and calibrated, detailed models can provide relatively accurate predictions of variable flows and water quality at any point in a watershed. The additional precision they provide, however, comes at the expense of considerable time and resource expenditure.

Detailed models use storm event or continuous simulation to predict flow and pollutant concentrations for a range of flow conditions. The models are large and were not designed with emphasis on their potential use by the typical state or local planner. Many of these models were developed for research into the fundamental land surface and instream processes that influence runoff and pollutant generation rather than to communicate information to decision makers faced with planning watershed management.

Detailed models incorporate the manner in which watershed processes change over time in a continuous fashion rather than relying on simplified terms for rates of change (Addiscott and Wagenet, 1985). They tend to require rate parameters for flow velocities and pollutant accumulation, settling, and decay instead of capacity terms. The length of time steps is variable and depends on the stability of numerical solutions as well as the response time for the system (Nix, 1991). Algorithms in detailed models more closely simulate the physical processes of infiltration, runoff, pollutant accumulation, instream effects, and groundwater/surface water interaction. The input and output of detailed models also have greater spatial and temporal resolution. Moreover, the manner in which physical characteristics and processes differ over space is incorporated within the governing equations (Nix, 1991). Linkage to biological modeling is possible because of the comprehensive nature of continuous simulation models. In addition, detailed hydrologic simulations can be used to design potential control actions.

These models use small time steps to allow for continuous and storm event simulations. However, input data file preparation and calibration require professional training and adequate resources. Some of these models (e.g., STORM, SWMM, ANSWERS) were developed not only to support planning-level evaluations but also to provide design criteria for pollution control practices. If appropriately applied, state-of-the-art models such as HSPF and SWMM can provide accurate estimations of pollutant loads and the expected impacts on water quality. New interfaces developed for HSPF and SWMM, and links with GISs, can facilitate the use of complex models for environmental decision making. However, their added accuracy might not always justify the amount of effort and resources they require. Application of such detailed models is more cost-effective when used to address complex situations or objectives.

The following are descriptions of selected detailed models:

- *Storage, Treatment, Overflow Runoff Model (STORM)*

STORM is a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (COE) model developed for continuous simulation of runoff quantity and quality, including sediments and several conservative pollutants. It also simulates combined sewer systems (Hydrologic Engineering Center, 1977). STORM has been widely used for planning and evaluation of the trade-off between treatment and storage control options for CSOs. Long-term simulations of runoff quantity and quality can be used for the construction of duration-frequency diagrams. These diagrams are useful in developing urban planning alternatives and designing structural control practices. STORM was primarily designed for modeling stormwater runoff from urban areas. It requires relatively moderate to high calibration and input data. STORM was initially developed for mainframe computer usage; however, several versions have been adapted by various individual consultants for use on microcomputers. The model has been applied recently to water quality planning in the City of Austin, Texas (Pantalion et al., 1995).

- *Areal Nonpoint Source Watershed Environment Response Simulation Model (ANSWERS)*

ANSWERS is a comprehensive model developed at the University of Georgia to evaluate the effects of land use, management schemes, and conservation practices or structures on the quantity and quality of water from both agricultural and nonagricultural watersheds (Beasley, 1986). The distributed structure of this model allows for a better analysis of the spatial as well as temporal variability of pollution sources and loads. It was initially developed on a storm event basis to enhance the physical description of erosion and sediment transport processes. Data file preparation for the ANSWERS program is rather complex and requires mainframe capabilities, especially when dealing with large watersheds. The output routines are quite flexible; results may be obtained in several tabular and graphical forms. The program has been used to evaluate management practices for agricultural watersheds and construction sites in Indiana. It has been combined with extensive monitoring programs to evaluate the relative importance of point and nonpoint source contributions to Saginaw Bay. This application involved the computation of unit area loadings under different land use scenarios for evaluation of the trade-offs between load allocations (LAs) and wasteload allocations (WLAs). Recent model revisions include improvements to the nutrient transport and transformation subroutines (Dillaha et al., 1988). Bouraoui et al. (1993) describe the development of a continuous version of the model.

- *Multi-event urban runoff quality model (DR3M-QUAL)*

DR3M is a watershed model for routing storm runoff through a branched system of pipes and/or natural channels using rainfall as input. The model provides detailed simulation of storm-runoff periods selected by the user and a daily soil-moisture accounting between storms. Kinematic wave theory is used for routing flows over contributing overland-flow areas and through the channel network. Storm hydrographs may be saved for input to DR3M-QUAL, which simulates the quality of surface runoff from urban watersheds. The model simulates impervious areas, pervious area, and precipitation contributions to runoff quality, as well as the effects of street sweeping and/or detention storage. Variations of runoff quality are simulated for user-specified storm-runoff periods. Between these storms, a daily accounting of the accumulation and wash-off of water-quality constituents on effective impervious areas is maintained. Input to the model includes the storm hydrographs, usually from DR3M. The program has been extensively reviewed within the USGS and applied to several urban modeling studies (Brabets, 1986; Guay, 1990; Lindner-Lunsford and Ellis, 1987) .

- *Simulation for Water Resources in Rural Basins - Water Quality (SWRRBWQ)*

The SWRRBWQ model was adapted from the field-scale CREAMS model by USDA to simulate hydrologic, sedimentation, nutrient, and pesticide movement in large, complex rural watersheds (Arnold et al., 1989). SWRRBWQ uses a daily time step to evaluate the effect of management decisions on water, sediment yields, and pollutant loadings. The processes simulated within this model include surface runoff, percolation, irrigation return flow, evapotranspiration, transmission losses, pond and reservoir storage, sedimentation, and crop growth. The model is useful for estimation of the order of magnitude of pollutant loadings from relatively small watersheds or watersheds with fairly uniform properties. Input requirements are relatively high, and experienced personnel are required for successful simulations. SWRRBWQ was used by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) to evaluate pollutant loadings to coastal estuaries and embayments as part of its national Coastal Pollution Discharge Inventory. The model has been run for all major estuaries on the east coast, west coast, and Gulf coast for a wide range of pollutants (Donigian and Huber, 1991). Although SWRRBWQ is no longer under active development, the technology is being incorporated into the Soil and Water Assessment Tool (SWAT) as part of the Hydrologic Unit Model for the United States (HUMUS) project at Temple, Texas (Arnold et al., 1993; Srinivasan and Arnold, 1994). EPA's Office of Science and Technology (OST) has recently developed a Microsoft Windows-based interface for SWRRBWQ to allow convenient access to temperature, precipitation, and soil data files.

- *Storm Water Management Model (SWMM)*

SWMM is a comprehensive watershed-scale model developed by EPA (Huber and Dickinson, 1988). It was initially developed to address urban stormwater and assist in storm-event analysis and derivation of design criteria for structural control of urban stormwater pollution, but it was later upgraded to allow continuous simulation and application to complex watersheds and land uses. SWMM can be used to model several types of pollutants provided that input data are available. Recent versions of the model can be used for either continuous or storm event simulation with user-specified variable time steps. The model is relatively data-intensive and requires special effort for validation and calibration. Its application in detailed studies of complex watersheds might require a team effort and highly trained personnel. SWMM has been applied to address various urban water quantity and quality problems in many locations in the United States and other countries (Donigian and Huber, 1991; Huber, 1992). In addition to developing comprehensive watershed-scale planning, typical uses of SWMM include predicting CSOs, assessing the effectiveness of BMPs, providing input to short-time-increment dynamic receiving water quality models, and interpreting receiving water quality monitoring data (Donigian and Huber, 1991). Warwick and Tadepalli (1991) describe calibration and verification of SWMM on a 10-square-mile urbanized watershed in Dallas, Texas. Tsihrintzis et al. (1995) describe SWMM applications to four watersheds in South Florida representing high- and low-density residential, commercial, and highway land uses. Ovbiebo and She (1995) describe another application of SWMM in a subbasin of the

Duwamish River, Washington. EPA's Office of Science and Technology distributes a Microsoft Windows interface for SWMM that makes the model more accessible. A postprocessor allows tabular and graphical display of model results and has a special section to help in model calibration.

- *The Hydrological Simulation Program - FORTRAN (HSPF)*

HSPF is a comprehensive package developed by EPA for simulating water quantity and quality for a wide range of organic and inorganic pollutants from agricultural watersheds (Bicknell et al., 1993). The model uses continuous simulations of water balance and pollutant generation, transformation, and transport. Time series of the runoff flow rate, sediment yield, and user-specified pollutant concentrations can be generated at any point in the watershed. The model also includes instream quality components for nutrient fate and transport, biological oxygen demand (BOD), dissolved oxygen (DO), pH, phytoplankton, zooplankton, and benthic algae. Statistical features are incorporated into the model to allow for frequency-duration analysis of specific output parameters. Data requirements for HSPF are extensive, and calibration and verification are recommended. The program is maintained on IBM microcomputers and DEC/VAX systems. Because of its comprehensive nature, the HSPF model requires highly trained personnel. It is recommended that its application to real case studies be carried out as a team effort. The model has been extensively used for both screening-level and detailed analyses. HSPF is being used by the Chesapeake Bay Program to model total watershed contributions of flow, sediment, nutrients, and associated constituents to the tidal region of the Bay (Donigian et al., 1990; Donigian and Patwardhan, 1992). Moore et al. (1992) describe an application to model BMP effects on a Tennessee watershed. Scheckenberger and Kennedy (1994) discuss how HSPF can be used in subwatershed planning. Ball et al. (1993) describe an application of HSPF in Australia. Lumb et al. (1990) describe an interactive program for data management and analysis that can be effectively used with HSPF. Lumb and Kittle (1993) present an expert system that can be used for calibration and application of HSPF.

Using the Walker BATHTUB Model in Lake Pepin, Minnesota

BATHTUB was developed for modeling reservoir water quality and is based on empirical data from U.S. Army Corps of Engineers' reservoirs (Walker, 1987). BATHTUB is routinely used in Clean Water Partnership (CWP) nonpoint source studies and for determining the need for effluent-P limitations in Minnesota. The CWP studies are similar to Clean Lakes Phase I studies and are typically designed to obtain accurate estimates of water and P loading from a lake's major subwatersheds. FLUX, a data reduction tool, is used to reduce flow and concentration data and provide accurate estimates of average flow and concentration (typically flow-weighted means) for the period of concern (typically one water year). Flow-weighted mean concentrations and flow data are used in BATHTUB. BATHTUB allows for segmentation of a lake or reservoir and can be used to route flows and loads between a series of lakes, thus accounting for upstream sedimentation. BATHTUB, Version 5.3 (Walker, 1995), also allows for the estimation of internal phosphorus loading.

In the absence of monitored data (e.g., small subwatersheds) phosphorus loading may be estimated based on land use composition of the subwatershed, runoff coefficients, and literature-based phosphorus concentrations for a specific land use (e.g. Walker, 1985b). This is often the case when determining effluent-phosphorus limits where detailed loading data are seldom available. In many instances with small dischargers (typically less than 1 MGD) some in-lake data are available, plant discharge is known, and background watershed phosphorus loading is estimated. BATHTUB is then used to determine the "effect" of the discharge on the lake and the need for an effluent-P limitation (typically 1 mg P/L) on the discharge to protect the condition of the lake.

BATHTUB was used to help establish a chlorophyll *a* goal for Lake Pepin, a run-of-the-river reservoir on the Mississippi River between Minnesota and Wisconsin (Heiskary and Walker, 1995). A major interagency study of Lake Pepin and the Mississippi River was initiated in 1990 in response to major nuisance algal blooms, which occurred during the low-flow summer of 1988, and to assess the impact of the 250 MGD Metropolitan Council's Metro wastewater treatment facility located 80 kilometers upstream of the lake. In Lake Pepin inorganic turbidity and flow, in addition to phosphorus, strongly influence chlorophyll *a* concentrations. By choosing a model subroutine which accounted for these factors, reliable estimates of chlorophyll *a*, as a function of flow (residence time) and inflow phosphorus concentration were made. In turn, the in-lake phosphorus concentration required to achieve the chlorophyll *a* goal of 30 ug/L (and thus minimize the frequency of severe nuisance blooms) over a range in flow conditions was estimated. The flows of concern in this case ranged from about 4,600 cfs (two percent reoccurrence) up to about 20,000 cfs (50 percent reoccurrence). A flow of 20,000 cfs corresponded to a residence time of about 11 days in Lake Pepin. Concurrent modeling of Lake Pepin by the Metropolitan Council using WASP provided comparable results (Lung and Larson, 1995).

Both modeling efforts raised questions about the role of internal loading in this system and to what degree internal loading might inhibit recovery of the system (even with substantial reductions in external loading). Subsequent permit negotiations led to (1) interim phosphorus limits at the Metro Plant; (2) provisions to pursue biophosphorus removal in a portion of the plant; and (3) further modeling of Lake Pepin and the Mississippi River to better understand the relationship between external loading, internal recycling, and the production of algae in the reservoir. More recent permit negotiations (1998-99) led to permanent phosphorus limits for the Metro Plant that will be accomplished through biological phosphorus removal. Detailed mechanistic modeling, conducted as a requirement of the previous permit, provided an improved understanding of this complex run-of-the-river reservoir. However, questions remained on the magnitude of internal loading and how this might influence the overall recovery of this system with reductions in external P loading.

CASE STUDY: The Minnesota Approach to Lake Eutrophication Modeling

The Minnesota Pollution Control Agency (MPCA) uses a suite of models in the course of lake eutrophication studies. Applications include: goal setting during Lake Assessment Program (LAP) studies; defining water and nutrient mass-balances during nonpoint source (Clean Water Partnership) studies; and establishing effluent-phosphorus limits for municipal and industrial wastewater discharges to lakes. The choice of model is dictated by the availability of data and the degree of precision required in the modeling estimate. For example, the establishment of effluent phosphorus limits for large dischargers requires greater precision than is required for a simple goal-setting exercise. The suite of models used by MPCA include (1) a simple regression model for predicting background phosphorus concentrations, (2) an ecoregion-based model, (3) spreadsheet methodologies based on the Reckhow and Simpson (1980) technique, (4) the BATHTUB model, and (5) mechanistic applications such as WASP. All of these models have been used as a basis for goal setting and can also be used to develop nutrient criteria, to predict whether lakes may achieve certain criteria levels, or to determine how point or nonpoint sources of phosphorus may impact a lake.

A regression model developed by Vighi and Chiaudani (1985), which is based on the morphoedaphic index (commonly used in fishery science), is frequently used in Minnesota to estimate background TP for lakes during LAP studies. The regression equation predicts TP based on lake morphometry (mean depth) and alkalinity or conductivity and provides a quick estimate of background phosphorus concentrations for a lake. When used in conjunction with reference-lake data sets and other models it can be very useful for goal setting. It may also be particularly useful for developing phosphorus criteria in regions where background conditions are assumed to be naturally oligotrophic to mesotrophic because the model-development data set is based on oligotrophic and mesotrophic lakes. This model is best used in conjunction with other tools and data sets and may be of limited value for goal setting in very shallow lakes, lakes with excessive internal loading, or lake/reservoir chains.

The "Minnesota Lake Eutrophication Analysis Procedures" (MINLEAP), was developed by MPCA staff based on an analysis of data collected from the reference lakes in each of Minnesota's ecoregions. It is intended to be used as a screening tool for estimating lake conditions with minimal input data (lake mean depth and surface area, watershed area, ecoregion, and some observed data for comparison). MINLEAP is described in greater detail in Wilson and Walker (1989). Routine data from minimally-impacted streams in each ecoregion are used as one basis for estimating inflow TP concentrations. Annual precipitation, evaporation, and runoff are summarized based on Minnesota Department of Natural Resources and USGS data and regionalized for use in the model (Wilson, 1990). The model predicts in-lake phosphorus concentrations based on the Canfield and Bachmann (1981) natural lake equation. Chlorophyll a and Secchi are estimated based on regression equations developed from the ecoregion-reference lake data set. In addition, nuisance frequencies of chlorophyll a are predicted based on equations developed by Walker (1985a). These nuisance frequency predictions are particularly useful for communicating the impact of increasing in-lake phosphorus concentrations to lake users and local governments.

The MINLEAP procedure has been extremely useful for quickly screening lake condition and as a basis for goal setting. The Vighi and Chiaudani regression is built into the model and allows for comparisons between the two methodologies. The MINLEAP model tends to work best for headwater lakes or lakes with moderate-sized watersheds. The model will tend to over-predict in-lake phosphorus concentrations for lakes with large watersheds or for chains of lakes, since upstream sedimentation is not specifically incorporated into the model. The program was originally written in BASIC but has been converted for use in Windows, thus increasing its utility and making it potentially adaptable for additional ecoregions or for use in other states.

The next level of modeling routinely employed by Minnesota is the Reckhow and Simpson spreadsheet model. This spreadsheet is based on Reckhow and Simpson (1980) and underlying concepts are discussed in greater detail in Wilson (1990). This model relies on phosphorus export coefficients and land uses as a basis for estimating phosphorus loading to a lake. Runoff coefficients and regional precipitation and evaporation data are used to estimate the lake water budget. This type of model can be useful for estimating the impact of changes in land use and making general estimates of the relative contributions to the in-lake phosphorus concentration from a variety of sources such as the watershed (e.g., soils), precipitation, and shoreland septic systems. The accuracy of the estimates is dependent on good land use data, appropriate phosphorus export coefficients for the region, and reliable in-lake data to initially test the model.

Appropriate phosphorus export coefficients are often a shortcoming of the Reckhow and Simpson technique. This is especially true for lakes with large watersheds and/or lakes which have extensive lake or wetland areas in their watershed. In these instances, routinely published export coefficients will often overestimate actual phosphorus loading and produce unreliable estimates. Prairie and Kalff (1986) provide some regression equations which take into account the size of the watershed, predominant land use, and the retention of phosphorus which occurs in large watersheds. This often yields more reasonable export estimates.

The MPCA version of the Reckhow-Simpson spreadsheet was modified by Wilson to include a methodology which allows for an estimate of the potential loading from feedlots in the watershed (Heiskary and Wilson, 1996). This analysis is based on estimates of animal units and literature estimates of phosphorus generated per animal. This feature is useful in watersheds with extensive feedlots or pasturing operations since routinely cited phosphorus exports for “pastured use” do not typically account for the high phosphorus exports arising from feedlots (Shuler, 1995). While a spreadsheet model of this type may have many shortcomings it often is the only readily available model which can be used to estimate land use changes in the watershed when data are very limited (as is often the case for local governments needing to assess the impact of small scale land use changes on the quality of a lake).

There are several other methodologies which are somewhat similar to that described here but more widely available and may be useful for developing or testing nutrient criteria or assessing the impact of land use changes in a lake’s watershed. Prominent among these would be EUTROMOD (Reckhow, 1990) and the Wisconsin Lake Model Spreadsheet (WILMS; Panuska et al., 1994). These two models and related models for assessing the impact of development in a watershed (such as Pondnet and Pondsiz) are readily available from the North American Lake Management Society (Phone: 608/233-2836).

APPENDIX A

Nutrient Region Descriptions

I. Willamette and Central Valleys

- Broad, arable, western valleys that are drier and flatter than the neighboring Western Forested Mountains (II)
- Soils are typically nutrient rich and more naturally fertile than those of the adjacent Western Forested Mountains (II)
- Cropland agriculture is the dominant landuse and contrasts with that of surrounding nutrient regions; associated fertilizer use and irrigation return has affected surficial water quality
- Areas of high human population density occur unlike in most of the Western Forested Mountains (II)

II. Western Forested Mountains

- High relief, mostly forested mountains; they contrast with the agriculturally dominated Willamette and Central Valleys (I) as well as the unwooded Xeric West (III) and the Great Plains Grass and Shrublands (IV)
- Elevational vegetation banding occurs. Highest elevations are wet, low-nutrient, glacially modified alpine areas with locally numerous tarns. High areas are dominated by coniferous forests and contain steep-gradient perennial streams. Deciduous trees become more common at lower elevations and grow with conifers in mixed stands that have a grass understory. Lowest areas are more xeric and can be dominated by shrubland and grassland; however, mountain-fed, perennial streams that are lined by riparian vegetation can be common.
- Logging is a common landuse and can strongly affect water quality
- Grazing occurs in the Western Forested Mountains (II) especially on shrublands and grasslands; associated nutrient problems occur
- Relatively small areas of agriculture are found in the Puget Lowland (2), near the Pacific Ocean, and within some mountain valleys

III. Xeric West

- Dry, unforested basins and plateaus with scattered mountains and buttes; the Xeric West (III) is climatically , physiographically, and vegetationally distinct from the Western Forested Mountains (II).
- Xeric West (III) is drier than surrounding nutrient regions
- Perennial streams are rare; those that occur typically originate outside the Region III in the Western Forested Mountains (II)
- Natural vegetation is often desertic and is typically dominated by sagebrush, creosote bush, and grassland; areas of woodland also occur
- Low density grazing is the common landuse of the Xeric West (III); it has affected vegetal cover, surficial water quality, and stream flow characteristics. The landuse mosaic is distinct from that of the Willamette and Central Valleys (I), Western Forested Mountains (II), and South Central Cultivated Great Plains (V)
- Agriculture is found only locally. It is often irrigated such as in the Imperial, Snake, and Gila valleys and is characterized by large anthropogenic inputs of nitrogen from artificial fertilizers. Nonirrigated agriculture also occurs including grain farming in the Palouse.
- Locally, areas of high human population density occur along with associated nutrient inputs

IV. Great Plains Grass and Shrublands

- Semiarid high plains with intermittent or ephemeral streams; perennial streams also occur but usually originate in the Western Forested Mountains (II)
- Great Plains Grass and Shrublands (IV) is drier than the Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains (VI) but moister than the Xeric West (III)
- Natural vegetation is short grass prairie and is distinct from that of the Western Forested Mountains (II), the Xeric West (III), and much of the Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains (VI)
- The Great Plains Grass and Shrublands (IV) is composed mostly of grassland and is largely nonarable; cropland is much less common than in the Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains (VI) and the South Central Cultivated Great Plains (V)
- Grazing is the common landuse and has reduced vegetal cover and has affected stream quality
- Cropland occurs locally such as in the Northwestern Glaciated Plains (42) ecoregion

V. South Central Cultivated Great Plains

- Part of the Great Plains
- The natural vegetation is mostly grassland and is distinct from that of the Western Forested Mountains (II)

- The South Central Cultivated Great Plains (V) is now mostly cropland that is dominated by sorghum and winter wheat farming; the landuse mosaic is distinct from that of the surrounding nutrient regions
- Dense concentrations of animal feed lots are found in the South Central Cultivated Great Plains (V); associated nutrient problems also occur

VI. Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains

- Rolling glaciated terrain is common; nearly-level, poorly-drained proglacial lakebeds occur locally
- The Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains (VI) is typically covered by nutrient-rich soils that are typically more fertile than those of the Great Plains Grass and Shrublands (IV), Nutrient Poor Largely Glaciated Upper Midwest and Northeast (VIII), and Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills (IX)
- Soils were derived from glacial drift; alfisols are found in the east while mollisols occur in the west
- The natural vegetation was mostly tall grass prairie and is distinct from that of the Great Plains Grass and Shrublands (IV) and the South Central Cultivated Great Plains (V)
- Today, the Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains (VI) is dominated by cropland agriculture and extensive corn, soybean, and wheat farming occurs. The landuse mosaic is different from that of surrounding nutrient regions
- Poorly drained areas occur locally and are typically nearly level and clayey; they must be tiled to be arable and streams are resultantly impact by severe turbidity problems
- Fertilizers have been extensively applied and nitrates can be found in the ground water
- Locally, feedlots and areas of high human population density occur together with associated nutrient problems.
- Lakes occur locally and are usually eutrophic

VII. Mostly Glaciated Dairy Region

- The Mostly Glaciated Dairy Region (VII) is transitional between the Nutrient Poor Largely Glaciated Upper Midwest and Northeast (VIII) and the Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains (VI)
- Region VII has a mix of nutrient rich and nutrient poor soils whereas Region VIII is dominated by relatively thin, nutrient-poor soils and Region VI has nutrient-rich soils
- Region VII contains fewer lakes than Region VIII and more than Region VI
- The lakes of Region VII have varying trophic states while those of Region VIII are typically of better quality
- The length of its growing season is in between that of the cooler Region VIII and the milder Region VI

- The landuse mosaic is dominated by dairying and is generally distinct from that of the Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains (VI); corn farming also occurs like in Region VI but is mostly used for silage
- Dairy cattle are often in close proximity to the region's perennial streams; associated impact on streams and lakes is widespread
- Locally, areas of high human population density and associated nutrient inputs occur

VIII. Nutrient Poor Largely Glaciated Upper Midwest and Northeast

- The forested Nutrient Poor Largely Glaciated Upper Midwest and Northeast (VIII) has a high concentration of oligotrophic lakes; lake density and quality is a contrast with those of the Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains (VI) and the Mostly Glaciated Dairy Region (VII)
- Soils are thinner and more nutrient poor than surrounding nutrient regions
- Human population density is low

IX. Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills

- Irregular plains and hills
- Originally, the Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills (IX) was mostly forested in contrast to the South Central Cultivated Great Plains (V); areas of savannah and grassland also occurred
- Today, Region IX is a mosaic of forest, cropland, and pasture
- The Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills (IX) is not as arable as the South Central Cultivated Great Plains (V) or the Corn Belt and Northern Great Plains (VI). However, there is much more cropland than Central and Eastern Forest Uplands (XI)
- Lateritic soils are common and are a contrast to the soils of the surrounding nutrient regions
- Areas of depleted soils are found in Region IX and are the result of cotton or tobacco farming
- Major poultry and aquaculture operations are found locally in the Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills (IX) and associated anthropogenic inputs of nutrients have occurred

X. Texas – Louisiana Coastal and Mississippi Alluvial Plains

- Alluvial and coastal plains
- Alluvial soils are naturally rich in contrast to those of the Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills (IX); they once supported southern floodplain forest
- Coastal plain soils once supported grassland
- The landuse mosaic of Region X is different from the Great Plains Grass and Shrublands (IV) and the Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills (IX)

- The dominant landuse of the Texas – Louisiana Coastal and Mississippi Alluvial Plains (X) is cropland agriculture. Cotton, soybeans, rice, sorghum, corn, and wheat are commonly grown
- Fertilizers have been extensively applied and have affected surficial water quality
- Locally, areas of high human population density occur along with associated nutrient inputs

XI. Central and Eastern Forest Uplands

- Mostly forested low mountains and high hills; streams are generally fast moving and are typically clearer than the low gradient streams of the Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills (IX)
- Scattered areas of intensive agriculture occur such as in the limestone valleys of the Ridge and Valley (67)
- Major poultry and aquaculture operations are found locally in the Central and Eastern Forest Uplands (XI) along with associated anthropogenic inputs of nutrients

XII. Southern Coastal Plain

- Flat, hot coastal plain that is physiographically distinct from the Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills (IX)
- Many solution and coastal plain lakes of varying trophic states occur; phosphate deposits locally affect lake quality
- The Southern Coastal Plain (XII) is dominated by extensive areas of citrus orchards and vegetable farming; its landuse mosaic is different from that of the Southeastern Temperate Forested Plains and Hills (IX), the Southern Florida Coastal Plain (XIII), and the Eastern Coastal Plain (XIV)
- Areas of high human population density occur along with associated nutrient inputs

XIII. Southern Florida Coastal Plain

- The Southern Florida Coastal Plain (XIII) is a tropical, nearly level coastal plain with broad wetlands; lakes are much less common than in the Southern Coastal Plain (XII)
- Today, Region XIII is extensively drained for agriculture and sugar cane farming is widespread; its landuse mosaic is distinct from that of the Southern Coastal Plain (XII)
- Locally, areas of high human population density occur along with associated nutrient inputs

XIV. Eastern Coastal Plain

- Coastal plain
- Swampy or marshy areas are found in the southern and central sections and forests grow in the northern portion
- Poorly-drained soils are common in the central and southern portion and nutrient poor soils are found in the northern section
- Cropland is generally limited in extent
- Areas of high human population density occur along with associated nutrient inputs
- Major poultry and aquaculture operations are found locally in the Eastern Coastal Plain (XIV); associated anthropogenic inputs of nutrients have occurred

APPENDIX B

Case Studies

STATEWIDE OR REGIONAL APPROACHES

1. NORTH CAROLINA
   Nutrient Control in North Carolina's Lakes and Reservoirs (D. Reid)
2. WISCONSIN
   Wisconsin Lake Phosphorus Criteria (G. Searle)
3. VIRGINIA
   The Virginia Nutrient Enriched Waters Designation (J. Gregory)
4. SOUTH DAKOTA
   A Watershed Approach - South Dakota (W. Stewart)
5. GEORGIA
   The Georgia Lake Standards Legislation (M. Walker)
6. TENNESSEE VALLEY
   The Tennessee Valley Authority Reservoir Vital Signs Monitoring Program: Chlorophyll and Nutrients Rating Scheme (N. Carriker and D. Meinert)
7. BRITISH COLUMBIA
   The British Columbia Water Use Based Approach (R. Nordin)
8. MINNESOTA
   Ecoregional Classification of Minnesota Lakes (S. Heiskary)

LAKE OR RESERVOIR SPECIFIC APPROACHES

9. DILLON RESERVOIR, COLORADO
   Dillon Reservoir Phosphorus Standard, Load Allocation, and Crediting System (R. Ray)
10. EVERGLADES, FLORIDA
    Interim Phosphorus Standards for the Everglades (W. W. Walker)

1. Nutrient Control in North Carolina's Lakes and Reservoirs

by Dianne Reid, North Carolina Department of Environmental Management

North Carolina's approach to the control of eutrophication could serve as a model for how to use specific criteria and special programs along with special use classifications to achieve restoration and protection of lakes and reservoirs under the Clean Water Act. This approach provides the flexibility necessary to develop management strategies for the wide variety of responses to nutrient loading seen in North Carolina lakes and reservoirs.

In the late 1970s in response to extensive algal blooms in a coastal river (Chowan River) which has many characteristics similar to a lake, North Carolina adopted a chlorophyll *a* standard of 40 µg/L for warm waters and 15 µg/L for cold waters as part of its water quality standards. Another important aspect of this standard was the inclusion of a narrative which gives the Director of the Division of Water Quality authority to prohibit or limit any discharge into surface waters if the Director determines that this discharge would contribute to exceedances of the chlorophyll *a* standard. This narrative has allowed the inclusion of more stringent nutrient limits in several permits throughout the state without reclassification or development of basinwide plans.

As a result of the work done on the Chowan River, the Division established an algal bloom program. This program analyzes phytoplankton, chlorophyll *a* and nutrients, as well as other parameters from lakes, reservoirs and slow-moving rivers throughout North Carolina. Data collected through this program resulted in a legislative ban on phosphate detergents for the entire state.

Another action that contributed significantly to nutrient control in North Carolina was the development of the Nutrient Sensitive Waters (NSW) supplemental classification. The NSW supplemental classification allows the state to seek abatement of the point and nonpoint source releases of nutrients upstream from a priority water body through the rule-making process. There are a total of six areas that have been declared NSW in North Carolina

Two of the areas were major reservoir watersheds, Falls of the Neuse Lake and Jordan Lake. Sufficient data were available to adapt nitrogen, phosphorus and chlorophyll *a* loading/response models and to assess the impact of predicted population growth and changes in wastewater inputs and land use. As a result of the modeling, new wastewater treatment plants, as well as major existing ones, are required to meet a total phosphorus effluent limitation of 2.0 mg/L.

Nonpoint pollution sources also are addressed. The state legislature created a targeted agricultural water quality cost sharing program to provide an incentive for producers and growers to use nutrient abatement practices. The program provides a 75 percent cost share and has been enthusiastically received. To control urban nonpoint sources, the state issued developmental (land use) guidelines to counties and municipalities in the lake watersheds for controlling urban pollutants through local ordinances. With the NPDES stormwater permit program and water supply watershed use designation, North Carolina is well positioned to control eutrophication in its lakes and reservoirs.

Another way that North Carolina is addressing eutrophication of its waters is within the basinwide water quality management process and plans. One example of how these management plans are being successfully used is in Lake Wylie (Catawba River Basin). In 1992, North Carolina documented eutrophic conditions in Lake Wylie and several of its major tributaries. Both point and nonpoint pollution sources were identified as contributing to high nutrient loadings resulting in violations of the State chlorophyll *a* standard. To address eutrophication in Lake Wylie, the State adopted a point and nonpoint nutrient control strategy for the Lake Wylie watershed. The basis for these actions was the chlorophyll *a* standard and its caveat allowing the Director to require nutrient controls at his or her discretion.

For point sources, the strategy required state-of-the-art nutrient removal for all new or expanding wastewater discharges in the vicinity of the lake. For nonpoint sources, this strategy included targeting of funds from the state's Agricultural Cost Share Program for the Reduction of Nonpoint Source Pollution for implementation of best management practices on agricultural lands in highly impacted watersheds of Lake Wylie.

In conjunction with the 1995 Catawba River basinwide planning effort, the Lake Wylie management strategy was reexamined and updated. As a result of the update, no new discharges will be allowed to the lake mainstem or its tributaries, unless an evaluation of engineering alternatives shows that such a discharge is the most environmentally sound alternative. Any new discharges that meet this requirement will be required to apply advanced removal technology.

New facilities (includes expansions) with a permitted design flow of greater than or equal to 1 million gallon per day (MGD) are required to meet monthly average limits of 1 mg/l total phosphorus and 6 mg/l total nitrogen, (nitrogen limits to apply for the months April through October only). New facilities and expansions with a permitted design flow of less than 1 MGD but greater than 0.05 MGD are required to meet a total phosphorus limit of 2 mg/l. The industries in the management area are to control TP and TN to best available technology levels as agreed upon with state regulators. It is entirely possible that discharges could receive more stringent nitrogen and phosphorus limits on a case-by-case basis if supported by sampling data and approved by the Director.

To reduce nutrient enrichment in the two most eutrophic arms of Lake Wylie, additional recommendations were made for point source discharges to the Catawba Creek and Crowders Creek watersheds. In both watersheds, incentives are to be established to encourage the privately owned facilities to tie on to larger municipal WWTPs.

2. Wisconsin Lake Phosphorus Criteria

by Greg Searle, Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources

In 1991 the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources (WDNR) began development of water quality criteria for phosphorus for lakes and impoundments. The Phosphorus Technical Workgroup (PTW) was charged with developing scientifically defensible phosphorus water quality criteria and passing the criteria on to a Technical Advisory Committee for implementation consideration. The PTW has completed the development of phosphorus “numbers” (the use of the term numbers will be explained after the development section) and has passed those “number” on to a Watershed Advisory Committee.

A. Development of Phosphorus “Numbers”

Historical total phosphorus data were obtained from the STORET database for lakes and impoundments across the state. The dataset was censored in the following ways:

- Minimum surface area was equal to or exceeded 25 acres.
- Sample dates were restricted to those collected between June 1 and September 15, inclusive.
- Surface data were utilized and defined as samples that were collected from a depth of four feet or less.

The reduced dataset was further categorized by drainage type and known summer thermal stratification patterns (mixed or stratified). With respect to drainage type, the waterbodies were designated as drainage or seepage waterbodies. The definition of drainage type was associated with the presence or absence of an outlet and not the source of water entering the waterbody.

To account for regional patterns of summer total phosphorus, the STORET data were overlayed on each of 21 sub-ecoregions of Wisconsin proposed by Omernik, et al. (1988). Evaluation of these data led to the conclusion that minimal data in many of the sub-ecoregions restricted the ability to accurately derive water quality criteria. Recent efforts of Lillie, et. al. (1993), to develop a Trophic State Index (TSI) for Wisconsin lakes showed clear associations between water clarity, chlorophyll *a* and TP on a regional basis. The PTW agreed that the STORET data should be evaluated using Lillie’s proposed regions.

WDNR staff concluded that a three-way separation (north, central, and south) of phosphorus regions for lakes was supported by the comparison of mean total phosphorus data. When comparing similarly impacted lakes in the proposed North vs. South regions, there was a trend of significance. Mean total phosphorus concentrations in lakes categorized as being moderately or slightly impacted were different while they were not for those lakes categorized as being highly impacted or those that were unranked altogether. This analysis did not support grouping the two regions together. In comparing both the proposed North or the South to the Central region, a consistent difference was not found in mean total phosphorus concentrations. These data clearly indicate that, while the Central region may be grouped with either the North or South Region, it does not bridge the two regions, and therefore supports a different set of water quality standards.

Like the regional inconsistencies observed in the comparative total phosphorus values for lakes, there were also inconsistencies observed in mean total phosphorus values for impoundments. Mean total phosphorus concentrations in the proposed South region were not significantly higher than those for the North. The mean total phosphorus values for the Central region were statistically different when compared with the North and South regions. Since the mean total phosphorus values may be similar in the North and South, but not the North and Central or the South and Central it was decided to separate the three regions altogether.

Having decided to further evaluate total phosphorus data using the three regions identified by Lillie, et al. (1993), the STORET data were combined for each region by drainage type and potential for thermal stratification. Based on PTW consensus, lower quartiles (25 percent quantile) were generated using SAS univariate procedures on all individual total phosphorus values in the censored STORET dataset. Once the lower quartile values were generated, they were further modified by rounding them down to the nearest multiple of five.

Several discussions occurred in previous PTW meetings regarding the significance of using the lower quartile numbers. PTW members exercised their “best professional judgement” and seemed to believe that the lower quartile would provide a conservative estimate of background total phosphorus concentrations in Wisconsin's lakes and impoundments. The members believed that there were more technical means of determining background values (i.e., paleolimnological studies, lake-specific, or impoundment-specific modeling, etc.). They acknowledged, however, that there were resource limitations and agreed that the lower quartiles were the best available method for estimating ambient water quality standards that would lead to satisfactory water quality if met. In accepting the concept of lower quartile-based water quality standards, there was unanimous agreement among PTW members that the group would recommend to the Watershed Advisory Committee that whatever administrative rule revisions were eventually made, there must be language which allows for the development of site-specific criteria where sufficient data are available.

Following the generation of the lower quartile values using each of the individual data points, a “trip” analysis was performed on mean total phosphorus values for lakes and impoundments to determine the relative proportion of waterbodies in a region that would likely exceed the lower quartile estimate. This analysis had been suggested by the PTW membership as a means of stating the degree of impact related to lower quartile-based water quality standards. A similar analysis had been performed in 1991 on a Bureau of Research dataset collected in 1979 in support of a statewide limnological survey of Wisconsin lakes. The key to this dataset was that the data were representative of a random collection of lakes and impoundments. This was in direct contrast to the STORET dataset which is very reflective of “problem” waterbodies that, in many cases, were studied intensively by the WDNR in an effort to better manage those resources. Due to the random nature of the random lakes data and the fact that they did not necessarily represent “problem” waterbodies, lower quartile and trip analyses were performed on those data in an effort to compare them to the result of the STORET data analyses

After reviewing the quartile and trip analysis data for both datasets (STORET and random lakes) the PTW agreed that the random lakes data should be used for any subsequent development of draft water quality criteria. The PTW did not want to totally abandon the STORET data, especially when the random lakes data were collected nearly 15 years earlier in 1979. Instead, the PTW membership agreed that a comparison of recently collected STORET data would be compared to the random lakes data to determine if water quality conditions had remained similar. More specifically, it was agreed that STORET data collected in a recent period of consecutive sample years would be analyzed to develop comparative quartiles. The “recent” dataset was to include all data collected in 1989-1993. No data collected in 1988 was to be included since it was a significant drought year. The resulting quartiles would be compared to those already generated for the random lakes dataset and the PTW would review the comparison at a subsequent meeting. This exercise was begun, but it was found that there was a lack of data from lakes and impoundments that were the same between both data sets. The PTW made a decision not to compare the random data set and recent STORET data due to this lack of data and also due to the conservativeness of the standards.

The PTW also agreed that impoundments should not be differentiated by drainage type since it is the nature of impoundments to have an outlet. All future standards development for impoundments should only consider the potential for thermal stratification in addition to the regional separation described earlier. The draft lake and impoundment criteria are as listed in **Tables 1 and 2**.

(b) Recommendations to the Watershed Advisory Committee

After thorough review and discussion of the available scientific information on phosphorus and phosphorus related impacts in lakes and impoundments, the PTW has concluded that meaningful stand-alone categorical statewide phosphorus water quality standards can not be developed on a state or regional basis. The determination of whether lakes and impoundments have undesirable phosphorus related impacts should ultimately be made on a site-specific basis, utilizing technical information and partner input. For this reason it is recommended that the numbers developed for use as water quality criteria be used as “triggers” or “flags” to require further action, if exceeded. The numbers were sent forward unlabeled (not criteria) for the Watershed Advisory Committee to determine the proper implementation methods.

Table 1: Ambient Water Quality Criteria for Phosphorus in Natural Lakes in µg/L

	Drainage/ Mixed	Drainage/ Stratified	Seepage/ Mixed	Seepage/ Stratified
North	15	10	10	10
Central	5	5	5	5
South	25	15	15	10

Table 2: Ambient Water Quality Criteria for Phosphorus in Impoundments in µg/L

	Mixed	Stratified
North	15	10
Central	5	5
South	25	15

The PTW endorses the use a watershed based regulatory approach that looks holistically at water quality within the watershed and utilizes partner involvement to prioritize and implement water quality initiatives within the watershed. With respect to phosphorus management, the PTW recommends use of an integrated approach that:

- Uses a screening step to identify those lakes and impoundments that may require a more thorough evaluation for phosphorus related impacts.
- Establishes a formal evaluation process for these lakes and impoundments which may lead to the development of a site specific or resource specific standard, expressed as an in-stream phosphorus concentration, a total maximum daily load (TMDL) or some other appropriate measurement (e.g. chlorophyll *a* density).

SERLE (WI) MAP FIGURE GOES HERE.

References

Omernik. J.M. and A.L. Gallant. 1988. See Map Insert in: *Ecoregions of the Upper Midwest States.* United States Environmental Protection Agency: Environmental Research Laboratory - Corvallis, Oregon. EPA/600/3-88/037.

Lillie, R.A., S. Graham, and P. Rasmussen. 1993. *Trophic State Index Equations and Regional Predictive Equations for Wisconsin Lakes*. Research Management Findings Number 35. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Madison, Wisconsin. 53707.

3. The Virginia Nutrient Enriched Waters Designation

by Jean Gregory, Virginia Department of Environmental Quality

The quality of Virginia's surface waters, particularly those in the Chesapeake Bay drainage area, is affected by the presence of nutrient enrichment. In recognition of this, the State Water Control Board (SWCB), now the Department of Environmental Quality, has developed a strategy to protect the surface waters of the Commonwealth of Virginia from the effects of nutrient enrichment.

In the mid-1980's, the State's General Assembly formed a joint legislative subcommittee to study these problems in the Chesapeake Bay. One of the recommendations in their final report was to direct the SWCB to develop water quality standards by July 1, 1988 to protect Chesapeake Bay and its tributaries from nutrient enrichment. The SWCB decided to expand this standards-setting activity statewide to include other river basins and lakes where there were known nutrient enrichment problems. A second legislative mandate to develop implementation strategies for carrying out these water quality standards was made jointly to the SWCB, which has jurisdiction for point sources, and the Division of Soil and Water, which is responsible for nonpoint source controls. As a result, SWCB developed two regulations that became effective on May 25, 1988. The first established a water quality standard that designated as "nutrient enriched waters" those waters of the Commonwealth that show evidence of degradation due to the presence of excessive nutrients. A companion policy regulation was created to control certain point source nutrient discharges affecting State waters designated as "nutrient enriched waters."

To assist them in developing the water quality standard, the SWCB formed a Technical Advisory Committee (TAC) comprised of 19 scientists from east coast universities and the Federal government. There were specific issues the Board was seeking advice on prior to developing these standards including such issues as whether narrative or numerical standards were needed, appropriate parameters and numerical levels, and the appropriate monitoring, sampling, and evaluation methods.

The SWCB used a variety of policy analysis techniques to obtain recommendations from the committee for the best indicators of nutrient enrichment. First, SWCB mailed a series of three delphi questionnaires to the 19 TAC scientists asking them to identify major issues and, thereby, reach some consensus on topics to focus on. Responses were anonymous so that the scientists would not bias each other. SWCB followed this process with a two-day spring (May 14-15, 1987) workshop held in Williamsburg by the University of Virginia's Institute of Environmental Negotiation. A summary report was compiled.

The Technical Advisory Committee recommended four parameters that could be used as in-stream indicators of nutrient enrichment. Listed in descending order of importance they are: chlorophyll *a*, dissolved oxygen (D.O.) fluctuations, total phosphorus, and total nitrogen. Note that the first two parameters are symptoms of nutrient enrichment rather than direct measurements of nutrients.

Each of these four parameters was considered to develop a recommendation for fresh water lakes.

- *Chlorophyll* a

Most TAC members favored use of a chlorophyll *a* criterion for lakes. A numerical level of

25 µg/l as a monthly average with a maximum one time exceedence level of 50 µg/l was proposed. These values received general support from the group. There was a discussion about whether the chlorophyll criterion should be based on planktonic chlorophyll only or some consideration be given to macrophytic chlorophyll as well. It was determined that a planktonic measure would be easier to sample and would accurately reflect the eutrophic condition of the lake.

It was suggested that monitoring samples be taken at one half the Secchi depth as long as that depth was greater than one foot. An alternative proposal was to use an integrated mixed layer sample which according to some members would yield more reliable results. The use of Secchi depth is, however, a well-recognized and reliable method and it was favored for its simplicity.

TAC members thought the numerical chlorophyll criterion for lakes should be combined with a narrative element that would deal with the problems caused by high chlorophyll levels—taste, odor, and clogged filters at water treatment plants.

- *Dissolved Oxygen*

It was the consensus of the TAC group that due to wide variation in D.O. at different depths and the difficulty this creates in setting standards and sampling techniques and the fact that D.O. problems are symptoms which would be reflected in other standards, no lake criterion for D.O. should be recommended. The group did agree that a narrative component addressing the conditions associated with D.O. problems should be drafted.

- *Total Phosphorus*

The TAC group suggested two possible lake criteria for total phosphorus in lake waters. A level of 50 µg/l as a weighted mean based on the water mass, or a level of 25 µg/l as a mixed layer mean. These levels were judged to be of equal validity as a measure of total P. (It was noted that if chlorophyll were sampled on a mixed layer basis this might be the preferred approach since the two samples could be taken at the same time.)

- *Total Nitrogen*

The TAC group discussed the possibility of linking the criterion for total nitrogen to the criterion for phosphorus. It was suggested that some N to P ratio could be used or that the nitrogen criterion could be set at ten times the phosphorus criterion. After discussion, the group agreed that no nitrogen criterion should be set. Phosphorus is almost always the limiting factor in the eutrophication of Virginia’s warm water lakes and the group thought a nitrogen criterion would be unnecessary.

A. Recommendations of the TAC

In freshwater lakes the state should consider setting a chlorophyll *a* criterion of 25 µg/l as a monthly average, with a one-time exceedence level of 50 µg/l with both measured at one-half the Secchi depth (if > 1 foot). This should be combined with a total phosphorus criterion of 50 µg/l as a weighted mean or 25 µg/l as a mixed layer mean. A narrative component should be developed as well to address more general chlorophyll *a* and D.O. problems in lakes.

Taking into consideration the recommendation of the committee, the SWCB decided to base its designations for lakes and all other surface waters on the first three parameters. A reference to these parameters was included in the introduction to the water quality standard regulation for designating nutrient enriched waters. SWCB was intentionally silent on the numerical limits because unacceptable amounts of these parameters could vary depending on the type of water body, whether it were a lake, free-flowing river, or tidal estuary. Since every designation would require an amendment to Virginia's water quality standards, and since full public participation is required by the agency and State rules for adopting regulations, SWCB felt that the public would be properly notified in every case of the appropriate scientific and numeric basis for these designations.

Average seasonal concentrations of chlorophyll *a* exceeding 25 mg/l, dissolved oxygen fluctuations, and high water column concentrations of total phosphorus have been the indicators used to date to evaluate the historical data and to identify those waters affected by excessive nutrients. Chlorophyll *a*, a pigment found in all plants, was used as the primary indicator because it indicates the quantity of plant growth.

Based on a review of historical water quality records, the SWCB designated as "nutrient enriched waters" three lakes, one tributary to a lake, nine embayments or tributaries to the Potomac River, the Virginia portion of the Chesapeake Bay, and a large portion of the Bay's tributaries. Since this initial round of designations, SWCB has amended the standard to designate the tidal freshwater portion of the Chowan River Basin in Virginia. SWCB intends to continue to review these designations and, during each triennial review of water quality standards, will consider additions and deletions to the list. For example, Lake Chesdin is proposed for designation during the current triennial review of the water quality standards regulation.

Since SWCB has authority to issue National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permits, and thereby, control point source discharges of nutrients, a policy for controlling certain point sources of nutrients to those waters designated as "nutrient enriched" was established. (Another agency, the Division of Soil and Water, developed strategies for managing nonpoint sources of nutrients to "nutrient enriched waters.") The policy requires certain municipal and industrial organizations that discharge effluents containing phosphorus to maintain a monthly average total phosphorus concentration of 2 mg/L or less. The 2 mg/L limit was based on the following criteria

- Limits that are readily achievable by chemical addition processes as demonstrated by experiences in other parts of the country
- Suggested achievable limits for biological phosphorus removal contained in several reports as well as in State pilot plant studies.

SWCB has found that this level of phosphorus removal would result in meeting the 40 percent reduction goal of total phosphorus for point source discharges from Virginia entering into the Chesapeake Bay.

Municipal and industrial dischargers that release phosphorus in concentrations above 2 mg/l to these "nutrient-enriched waters" are subject to this policy if they have a design flow of 1.0 MGD or greater and a permit issued on or before July 1, 1988. These dischargers were required to meet the 2 mg/l effluent limitation as quickly as possible and, in any event, within three years following modification of the NPDES permit. If the discharger voluntarily accepted a permit which required nitrogen removal to meet a monthly average total nitrogen effluent limitation of 10 mg/l for April thorough October, the discharger was allowed an additional year to meet the phosphorus effluent limitation.

All new source dischargers with a permit issued after July 1, 1988, and a design flow greater than or equal to 0.05 MGD that propose to discharge to “nutrient-enriched waters” are also required to meet a monthly average total phosphorus effluent limitation of 2 mg/l. All dischargers to “nutrient-enriched waters” that, at the time of that designation, were subject to effluent limitations more stringent than the 2 mg/l monthly average total phosphorus, are required to continue to meet the more stringent phosphorus limitation.

The policy regulation also contains language that allows SWCB to require monitoring of discharges when the permittee has the potential for discharging monthly average total phosphorus greater than 2 mg/l and also allows adjoining States to petition the Board to consider rulemakings to control nutrients entering tributaries to their nutrient-enriched waters.

The policy regulation states that after the point source controls are implemented and the effects of this policy and the nonpoint source control programs are evaluated, the SWCB recognizes that it may be necessary to impose further limitations on dischargers for additional nutrient control to prevent undesirable growths of aquatic plants. This policy can thus be viewed as the first phase of a strategy to protect Virginia’s waters from the effects of excessive nutrients.

4. A Watershed Approach - South Dakota

by William Stewart, South Dakota Department of Environment and Natural Resources

The State of South Dakota has had ambient water quality standards in place for lakes since the late 1960's. These standards exist in both numeric and narrative forms. Phosphorus is not listed as a parameter in the numeric standards but is covered by the narrative section. At this time, there are no numeric limits on phosphorus on any surface waters of the state.

The Watershed Protection Program is part of the South Dakota Department of Environment and Natural Resources. This program is responsible for nonpoint source pollution control and lake management. The Watershed Protection Program is based on requests for assistance from local groups such as lake associations or conservation districts. Virtually all of the watershed and lake restoration projects in the state are done on a voluntary basis and enforcement is seldom used, except in extreme cases. By far and away, the largest problem for South Dakota lake water quality is sediment and nutrients from agricultural nonpoint source pollution.

The first step in conducting a lake restoration project in South Dakota is the assessment of the lake and it's watershed. A typical assessment project is a two year effort, including intensive water quality monitoring of the lake and tributaries, stream gauging, biological sampling, land-use modeling, and public outreach.

A mathematical relationship developed by Vollenweider and Kerekes (1980) is used to model the relationship between phosphorus inflows and ambient total phosphorus concentrations in the lake. By changing the phosphorus inflows in the equation, corresponding changes in in-lake phosphorus are estimated. In this way, we are able to model changes in chlorophyll a concentrations and the response of in-lake phosphorus concentration to the reduction of tributary phosphorus levels.

Once we have determined the target reduction in in-lake phosphorus, we use the Agricultural Nonpoint Source (AGNPS) model to estimate load reductions from the watershed. In order to use the AGNPS program, the watershed is divided into 40 acre cells and 21 parameters are collected for each cell. The model estimates loads of nitrogen, phosphorus, and sediment to the lake. By adding various Best Management Practices to the model, it is possible to determine which practices are needed to reach the estimated watershed phosphorus reduction to produce the desired ambient in-lake phosphorus concentration.

The information from the lake/watershed assessment is used to develop an implementation plan for restoration. The South Dakota Watershed Protection Program has had considerable success with this procedure. The lake and watershed stakeholders generally accept the assessment reports and find them to be useful planning tools in the development of restoration plans.

References

Vollenwieder, R.A. and J. Kerekes, 1980. *The loading concept as a basis for controlling eutrophication*. Philosophy and preliminary results of the OECD Programme on Eutrophication. Prog. Water Technol. 12:3-38.

5. The Georgia Lake Standards Legislation

by Max Walker, Georgia Department of Natural Resources

In 1990, the Georgia General Assembly adopted a lake standards bill (O.C.G.A. 12-5-23.1). A copy of the bill is reproduced below. The legislation requires the Georgia Environmental Protection Division (EPD) to conduct comprehensive studies and develop water quality standards for lakes with a surface area of 1,000 acres or more. The General Assembly provided no funds to support implementation of the legislation. Phase I Diagnostic-Feasibility Studies have been completed by EPD using USEPA Clean Lakes funds on Lakes West Point, Walter F. George, and Jackson. Based on the information collected as a part of the Phase I studies, water quality standards were developed and adopted for each lake. Phase I studies are ongoing on Lakes Lanier, Allatoona, Blackshear, and Carters. At such time as the studies are completed, the EPD will use the information and develop and adopt water quality standards for these lakes.

12-5-23.1 Water quality standards for lakes; monitoring; studies and reports; development, approval, and publication of water quality standards.

(a) As used in the Code section, the word “lake” means any publicly owned lakes or reservoir located wholly or partially within this state which has a normal pool level surface average of 1,000 or more acres.

(b) The director shall establish water quality standards for each lake which require the lake to be safe and suitable for fishing and swimming and for use as a public water supply, unless a use attainability analysis conducted within requirements of this article demonstrates such standards unattainable.

(c) For purposes of this subsection, a multiple parameter approach for lake water quality standards shall be adopted. Numerical criteria including, but not limited to, those listed below shall be adopted for each lake:

(A) pH (maximum and minimum):

(B) Fecal coliform bacteria;

(C) Chlorophyll *a* for designated areas determined as necessary to protect a specific use;

(D) Total nitrogen;

(E) Total phosphorus loading for the lake in pounds per acre feet per year; and

(F) Dissolved oxygen in the epilimnion during periods of thermal stratification.

(d) The standards for water quality of each lake shall take into account the geographic location of the lake within the state and the location of the lake within its watershed as well as horizontal and vertical variations of hydrological conditions within each lake. The director shall also establish nutrient limits for each of the lakes’ major tributary streams including streams with permitted discharges. Such limits shall be consistent with the requirements of subsection (b) of this Code section and shall be established on the basis of accepted limnological techniques and as necessary in accordance with the legal and technical principles for total maximum daily loads. The nutrient limits for tributary streams shall be established at the same time that the lake water quality standards are established.

(e) After water quality standards are established for each lake and its tributary streams, the division shall monitoring each lake on a regular basis to ensure that the lake reaches and maintains such standards.

(f) The data from such monitoring shall be public information. The director shall have the authority to close a swimming area if data from samplings indicates, in the opinion of the director, that such action is necessary for public safety.

(g) Provided funds are available form any source, there shall be a comprehensive study of each lake prior to adopting lake water quality standards for the lake. Study components and procedures will be established after consultation with local officials and affected organizations. The comprehensive study for lake Sidney Lanier, Lake Water F. George, and West Point Lake shall be initiated during 1990. At least three comprehensive studies for participating lakes shall be initiated in each subsequent year. The duration of each study shall not exceed to years. A scientific report on each comprehensive study shall be published within 180 days after the completion of the study. Draft recommendations for numerical criteria for each of the water quality parameters will be simultaneously published, taking into account the scientific findings. A public notice of the draft recommendations, including copy of the recommendations, will be made available to the public. Public notice in accordance with Chapter 13 of Title 50, the “Georgia Administrative Procedure Act,” shall be provided for such recommendations. The notice shall be made available at least 30 days prior to board action in a regional public library or county courthouse. The recommendations will be provided to persons submitting a written request. A comment period of not less than 45 days nor more than 60 days will be provided.

(h) The director or the director’s designated shall conduct a public hearing within the above-referenced comment period in the vicinity of the lake before the final adoption of lake water quality standards for the lake. The director shall announce the date, time, place, and purpose of the public hearing at least 30 days prior to the hearing. A ten-day period subsequent to the hearing will be allowed for additional public comment.

(i) The Department of Natural Resources will evaluate the comments received during the comment period and during the public hearing and will then develop recommended final standards and criteria for submission to the Board of Natural Resources for consideration and approval.

(j) The final recommendations of the director for lake water quality standards shall be made to the Board of Natural Resources within 60 days after the close of the comment period subsequent to the public hearing provided for in subsection (h) of this Code section. The standards, with such modifications as the board may determine, shall be considered for adoption by the board of Natural Resources within 60 days after receiving the recommendations from the director. Such standards shall be published by the department and made available to all interested local government officials and citizens of the area served by the lake.

(k) At the discretion of the direction, comment periods and deadlines set forth above may be extended, but in no circumstance shall more than one year elapse between the completion of the lake study and the adoption of the final recommendations. (Code 1981, § 12-5-23.1, enacted by Ga. L. 1990, p. 1207, § 1.)

6. The Tennessee Valley Authority Reservoir Vital Signs Monitoring Program: Chlorophyll and Nutrients Rating Scheme

by Neil Carriker and Dennis Meinert, Tennessee Valley Authority

A. Philosophical Approach and Background

Algae are the base of the aquatic food chain; consequently, measuring algal biomass or primary productivity is important in evaluating ecological health. Without algae converting sunlight energy, carbon dioxide, and nutrients into oxygen and new plant material, a lake or reservoir could not support other aquatic life. Chlorophyl *a* is a simple, long-standing, and well-accepted measurement for estimating algal biomass, algal productivity, and trophic condition of a lake or reservoir (Carlson, 1977).

Developing appropriate expectations is critical to evaluating the implications of chlorophyll concentrations on reservoir ecological health. Generally, lower chlorophyll concentrations in the oligotrophic range are thought of as indicating good water quality conditions. Conversely, high chlorophyll concentrations are usually considered indicative of cultural eutrophication. However, these generalizations must be tempered by geologic and cultural considerations. The range of chlorophyll concentrations considered indicative of good, fair, and poor ecological conditions must be tailored to reflect knowledge of background or natural conditions within each watershed.

It is unrealistic to expect most Tennessee Valley reservoirs to have low chlorophyll concentrations because many are located in watersheds that have nutrient-rich, easily erodible soils. Most lakes and reservoirs in the Tennessee Valley naturally contain sufficient nutrients to support algal populations with chlorophyll concentrations in the mesotrophic range, even in the absence of anthropogenic sources and cultural eutrophication. However, two watersheds in the Tennessee Valley, the Little Tennessee River and the Hiwassee River watersheds, have soils (and consequently waters) with naturally low nutrient levels. The streams in these watersheds drain the Blue Ridge Ecoregion which is largely characterized by thin soils and is underlain mostly with hard crystalline and metasedimentary rocks.

The classification scheme for evaluating chlorophyll concentrations in Tennessee Valley reservoirs is based on expected “natural” nutrient levels for each watershed. Professional judgment was used to identify concentration ranges indicative of good, fair, and poor conditions. This approach separates Tennessee Valley reservoirs into two classes. This approach separates Tennessee Valley reservoirs into into two classes for chlorophyll expectations -- those expected to be naturally oligotrophic because they are in watersheds with naturally low nutrient concentrations and those expected to be naturally mesotrophic. The reservoirs expected to be oligotrophic are in the Blue Ridge Ecoregion. This group includes Hiwassee, Chatuge, Nottely, Blue Ridge, and Parksville reservoirs in the Hiwassee River drainage; and Tellico and Fontana reservoirs in the Little Tennessee River drainage. The remainder, both mainstream Tennessee River reservoirs and reservoirs on tributaries to the Tennessee River, are expected to be mesotrophic.

The concentration ranges identified to represent good, fair, and poor conditions are much lower for reservoirs in the nutrient-poor watersheds. The primary concern for those reservoirs is early identification of cultural eutrophication. With early identification, appropriate actions can be taken to manage nutrient loadings and prevent shifts to higher trophic states. For the reservoirs expected to be mesotrophic, the principal concern is that algal productivity (and chlorophyll levels) not become too great because of the undesirable characteristics associated with eutrophic lakes (dense algal blooms, poor water clarity, low DOs, and predominance of noxious blue-green algae). For mesotrophic reservoirs where sufficient nutrients are available but chlorophyll concentrations remain low, some other factor such as excessive turbidity or toxicity usually is present that inhibits algal growth. Consequently, the rating for chlorophyll *a* is lowered when those conditions are observed.

B. Data Collection Methods

Depth-integrated composite chlorophyll *a* samples are collected monthly (April-October) from the photic zone (defined as twice the Secchi depth or 4 meters, whichever is greater). Concurrent algae and zooplankton samples are collected for screening and semi-qualitative examination of the plankton community assemblage. In addition, in-situ water column profiles of temperature, dissolved oxygen, pH, conductivity; and Secchi depth measurements are obtained each time samples are collected. Finally, on three of the monthly surveys (April, June and August), the photic zone composite samples are analyzed for nutrient levels (total phosphorus, ammonia-nitrogen, nitrate+nitrite-nitrogen, and organic nitrogen) to help in evaluating the chlorophyll data and to help support trophic state assessments.

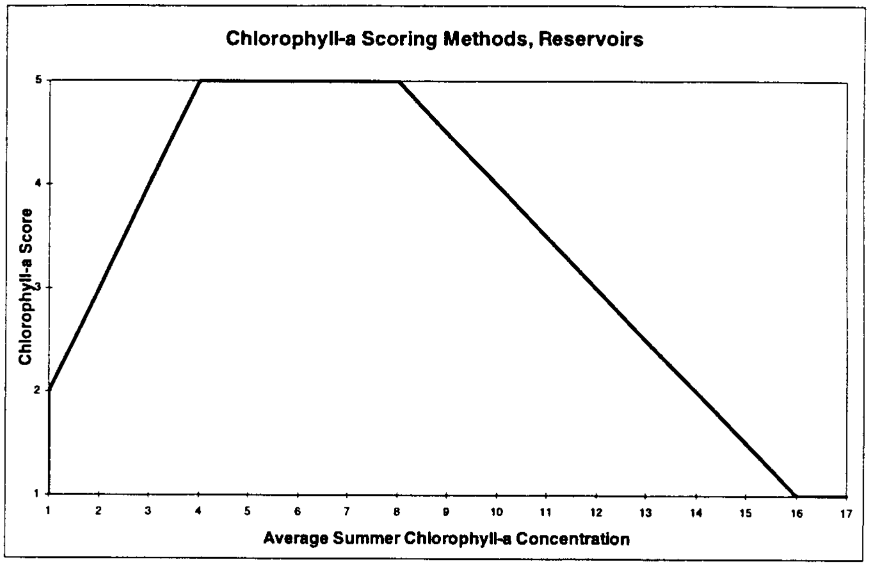
In 1996, physical/chemical water quality variables were measured at 33 locations on 19 Tennessee Valley reservoirs. Additional details on collection methods are available in an informal TVA report.

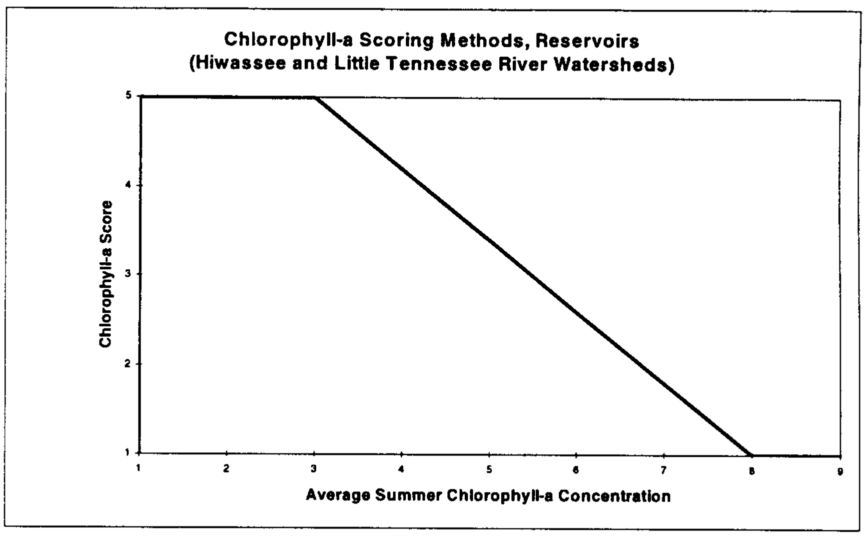
C. Chlorophyll Rating Scheme

Chlorophyll ratings at each sampling location are based on the average summer concentration of monthly, composite photic zone samples collected from April through October (or September), using the criteria shown in **Figure 1** for reservoirs expected to be mesotrophic, and in **Figure 2** for reservoirs in the Little Tennessee and Hiwassee River watersheds. If nutrients are present (e.g. total phosphorus greater than 0.01 mg/L and nitrate+nitrite-nitrogen greater than 0.05 mg/L) but chlorophyll *a* concentrations are generally low (e.g. < 3ug/L), other limiting or inhibiting factors (e.g., high stream flows, turbidity, toxicity, etc.) are considered to be present, and the chlorophyll *a* rating is decreased one unit.

References

Carlson, R.E. 1977. A trophic state index for lakes. *Limnol. Oceanogr*. 22:361-369.





Figures 1 and 2. Chlorophyll-a Rating -- The chlorophyll-a rating at each sampling location is based on the average summer concentration (of monthly photic zone composite samples). If triplicate samples are collected at a sampling location, only the median value of the triplicate is used in the calculation of the summer average and the maximum. If a monthly chlorophyll-a sample has a concentration that exceeds 30 ug/l, the value is not included in the calculation of the summer average, however, the final chlorophyll-a rating is decreased one unit, (i.e. 5 to 4, or 4 to 3, etc.) for each sample that exceeds 30 ug/l.
* If nutrients are present (e.g. total phosphorus greater than about 0.01 mg/L and nitrate+nitrite-nitrogen greater than about 0.05 mg/L) but chlorophyll-a concentrations are generally low (e.g. < 3ug/L), other limiting or inhibiting factors (e.g., high streamflows, turbidity, toxicity, etc.) must be considered. When these conditions exist, the chlorophyll-a rating is decreased one unit.

7. The British Columbia Water Use Based Approach

by Richard Nordin, British Columbia Ministry of the Environment

British Columbia has elected to establish criteria according to different uses (Nordin, 1986). In three of the water uses they have defined—drinking water, protection of aquatic life, and recreation and aesthetics—nutrients are important. The sequence for determining criteria is shown in **Figure 1**. Literature review, input from other agencies (e.g., existing criteria), and evaluation of problems which exist or have existed in British Columbia lakes were used to derive the criteria. The literature review focused on interrelationships between nutrients, primary productivity, and hypolimnetic oxygen depletion; cold water fishery requirements; and public perception of water quality. British Columbia's criteria are presented in Table 1. Phosphorus concentration was used because there is ample evidence in the literature that quantitative interrelationships exist between it and chlorophyll and transparency, its acceptance as an index of eutrophication, and the advantage of quantifying the controlling parameter.

Nordin (1986) notes that these criteria are proposed specifically for British Columbia where the lakes fall largely into the oligotrophic category and may not be directly applicable to other areas.

Criteria for lakes supporting warm water fish were not included (Nordin, 1985). Nordin (1986) notes the difficulty in trying to establish criteria for lakes where a warm water fishery is the most important use, stating that a phosphorus concentration below 10 _g/L is probably too low (leading to low fish productivity) and that concentrations up to 40 _g/L may be tolerable for lakes where recreational fisheries are important and conditions are suitable. The lack of either empirical or experimental data was cited as a major impediment to suggesting criteria for nutrient concentrations for fish or aquatic life other than the salmonid fishes (salmon and trout) that are of primary concern in British Columbia.

In applying these criteria and checking them against existing water quality, the water exchange time of the lake must be taken into account. The phosphorus concentration is measured at spring overturn (when the epilimnetic water residence time is greater than six months) or the mean epilimnetic growing season concentration is measured (if the epilimnetic residence time is less than six months).

Table 1: British Columbia’s Lake Water Quality Criteria for Nutrients (Nordin, 1985).

Most Sensitive Use	Phosphorus Criteria
Drinking water	< 10 µg/L
Recreation and aesthetics	< 10 µg/L
Aquatic life (cold water fish)	5-15 µg/L*

* A range is suggested as the criterion which can be used as the basis for site specific water quality objectives.

The second step in the process is to apply the criteria to individual lakes. The criteria value may be modified up or down into an "objective" depending on the water uses or other circumstances which may apply for that specific lake. The various factors considered (i.e., data gathered) in establishing the objectives include: hydrology, water uses, waste discharges, water quality data (including dissolved oxygen and temperature profiles, general chemistry nutrients, chlorophyll, and transparency), phosphorus loading, algal species composition, and sediment chemistry. Details on the use of these factors may be found in Nordin (1985). The resulting water quality objectives by themselves have no legal standing and would not be directly enforced (McKean et al. 1987) but are used as a method for planning or for initiating other management techniques or administrative orders.

The objectives are considered policy guidelines for resource managers to protect water uses in the specified water bodies. They guide the evaluation of water quality; the issuing of permits, licenses, and orders; and the management of the fisheries and the province's land base. They will also provide a reference against which the water quality in a particular water body can be checked, and aid decisions on whether to initiate basin-wide water quality studies. In cases where objectives are set, the policy is to put into place a monitoring program for a period of at least three years to evaluate the lake to which the water quality objectives have been applied.

In some cases interim or intermediate goals for lake phosphorus concentrations have been used where ambient concentrations greatly exceeded the proposed criteria. The details of some of these criteria are discussed in Section VII(B).

A. Uses of Lake Standards in British Columbia

British Columbia's phosphorus criteria serve as a tool for protecting the most sensitive lake uses. These uses typically include drinking, cold water fish or other aquatic life, recreation, and aesthetics. The two primary applications of the criteria are:

- To evaluate data on water, sediment, and biota for water quality assessments.
- To establish site-specific water quality objectives.

Water quality objectives serve as policy guidelines for resource managers in their mission to protect water uses in specified water bodies. Water quality objectives guide the resource manager in the evaluation of water quality; issuance of permits, licenses and orders; and management of fisheries and the watershed (McKean et al. 1987). They also provide a reference against which the water quality status in a particular water body can be monitored, and as a basis for making decisions on the initiation of basin-wide water quality studies. In many instances, the water quality objectives serve as the primary means of planning for the protection and evaluation of water quality (Ministry of Environment, 1985, and 1997).

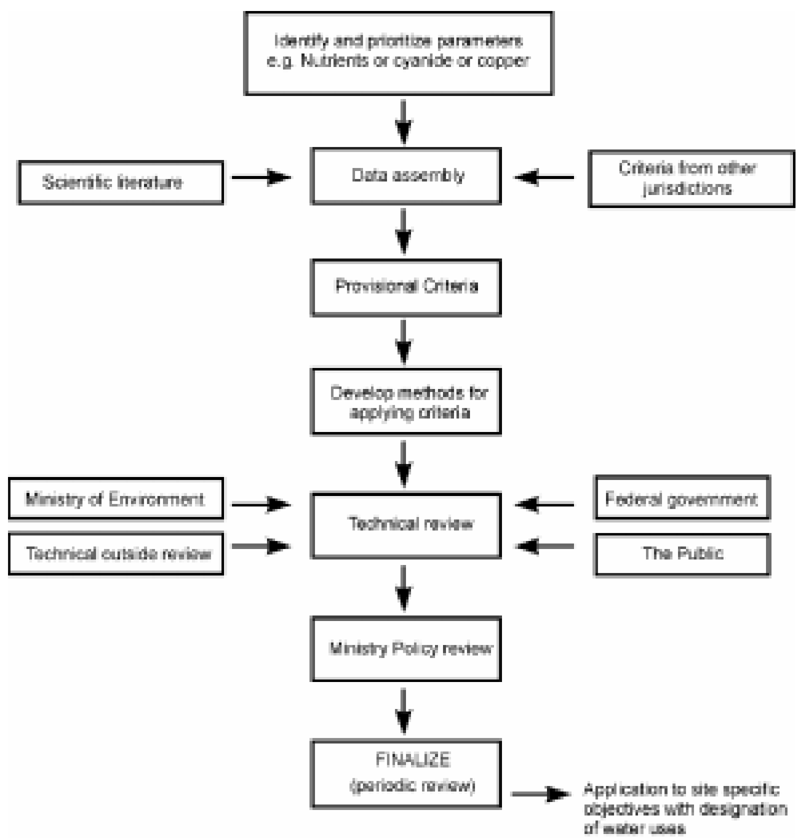
The Ministry of Environment (1985) promotes the criteria as a means of avoiding the need for costly and high precision loading studies. In contrast to accuracy needed to establish "critical" loadings in waste allocations, loading estimates in the context of water quality objectives are used only to determine relative contributions from various sources. The loading contribution estimates are then used to prioritize the importance of various inputs. In Okanagan Lake, where the water quality objective for the lake was the same as the 1985 phosphorus concentration (10 µg/L), the management strategy focused on maintaining concentrations (Ministry of Environment, 1985). In this case, if increased "trading" from development and municipal effluent were to occur, then source reductions from the sources (e.g., agricultural sources or septic tanks) would need to be sought. This suggests that point/nonpoint source "trading" is among British Columbia's management tools to ensure that water quality objectives are met.

Specific water quality objectives have been set in about 15 lakes where the entire objective setting (rigorous evaluation) has been done. The criteria have been applied to evaluating hundreds of other lakes.

In some of the lakes in the province where long term eutrophication problems exist and where phosphorus concentrations greatly exceeded the criteria (several lakes with phosphorus concentrations greater than 50 µg/L), the objectives were either set to the criteria (5 to 15 µg/L) or an interim goal (30 µg/L) (Wood Lake in Ministry of Environment, 1985 or Charlie Lake in Nordin and Pommen 1985) .

The most recent approach has been to combine the phosphorus objectives with biological objectives that specify phytoplankton community composition where, for instance, reduction in the frequency or numbers of cyanobacteria is a goal for water quality protection (Cavanagh et al. 1994).

Overall the approach to using water-use based approach has been well accepted within British Columbia and is also used by the Canadian federal government in specifying its criteria for a variety of water quality parameters.



Nordin1

References

British Columbia Ministry of Environment. 1985. *The phosphorus in the Okanagan Valley Lakes: sources, water quality objectives and control possibilities*. Water Management Branch, Waste Management Branch. Province of British Columbia.

British Columbia Ministry of Environment. 1997. *Water Quality in British Columbia - Objectives attainment 1995*. Victoria BC. 120p.

Cavanagh, N., R.N. Nordin and J.E. Bryan. 1994. *Christina Lake Water Quality Assessment and Objectives*. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Victoria British Columbia. Summary report 18p. Technical Report 106p.

McKean, C.J., N.K. Nagpal, and N.A. Zirnhelt. 1987. *Williams Lake water quality assessment and objectives*. Ministry of Environment and Parks, Province of British Columbia.

Nordin, R.N. 1985. *Water quality criteria for nutrients and algae*. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Victoria.

Nordin, R.N. 1986. Nutrient water quality criteria for lakes in British Columbia. *Lake Reserv. Manage*. 2:110-113.

Nordin, R.N. and L.W. Pommen. 1985. *Peace River area, Charlie lake sub-basin, water quality assessment and objectives (technical appendix)*. BC Ministry of Environment, Victoria BC. 34p.

8. Ecoregional Classification Of Minnesota Lakes

Minnesota has over 12,000 lakes spread across diverse geographic areas. Previous studies had shown distinct regional patterns in lake productivity associated with regional differences in geology, vegetation, hydrology and land use (Heiskary and Wilson, 1989). Minnesota contains seven ecoregions (Omernik, 1987), and four of the ecoregions contain 98 percent of the lakes. These four ecoregions are the Northern Lakes and Forest (NLF), North Central Hardwood Forest (NCHF), Northern Glaciated Plains (NGP), and Western Corn Belt Plains (WCBP) (**Figure 1**). Minnesota uses these ecoregions as the framework for analyzing data, developing monitoring strategies, assessing use patterns, and developing phosphorus goals and criteria for lakes (Heiskary, 1989).

The Minnesota Pollution Control Agency (MPCA) and several other groups collected data on chlorophyll *a* concentrations and several water quality parameters (total phosphorus, total nitrogen, and Secchi transparency) in 90 reference lakes between 1985 and 1987. Secchi transparency data were collected mostly by volunteer participants in the Citizen Lake Monitoring Program. Reference lakes were chosen to represent minimally impacted sites within each ecoregion. Criteria used in selecting reference lakes included maximum depth, surface area, fishery classification, and recommendations from the Minnesota Department of Natural Resources (Heiskary and Wilson, 1989). Lake morphometry had previously been examined. In addition to the reference lake data base, MPCA examined a statewide data base containing data collected by these same groups on approximately 1,400 lakes form 1977 to 1987.

Figure 6.1: Minnesota Ecoregions

Differences in morphology, chlorophyll *a* concentrations, total phosphorus, total nitrogen, and Secchi transparency were found among lakes in the four ecoregions in both studies. Lakes in the two forested ecoregions (NLF and NCHF) are deeper (median maximum depth of 11 meters) with slightly smaller surface areas (40 to 280 ha) than those in the plains ecoregions (NGP and WCBP). Lakes in the two plains ecoregions were typically shallow (median maximum depth of 3 meters) with larger surface areas (60 to 300 hectares).

Box-and-whisker plots for chlorophyll *a* and water quality measurements in the reference lake study paralleled the morphological differences seen among the ecoregions (Heiskary and Wilson, 1989). The two plains ecoregions had significantly higher chlorophyll a levels than either of the two forested ecoregions. Results of the statewide data base analysis showed these same trends. The results of these two data base analyses support the use of ecoregions in developing frameworks for data analysis, monitoring strategies, assessing use patterns, and developing phosphorus goals and criteria for lakes.

9. Dillon Reservoir Phosphorus Standard, Load Allocation, and Crediting System

by Robert Ray, Northwest Colorado Council of Governments

Dillon Reservoir is located in Summit County, Colorado at an elevation of 9,000 feet. Constructed in 1963 as Denver's primary water supply, the reservoir holds 254,000 acre feet of water and has a surface area of 3,300 acres. Dillon Reservoir has also become a recreational center for fishing, camping, and boating. One of the reservoir's main attractions is its reputation for clear, deep blue water.

During the late 1970's and early 1980's, Summit County was one of the fastest growing areas of the country. About this time, water quality degradation in the reservoir became apparent with the onset of algal blooms. A "Clean Lakes" study identified phosphorus as the limiting factor for algal growth the reservoir. Studies of phosphorus loading to the reservoir revealed that approximately one-half of the phosphorus load came form natural sources, while the other half was from human activities including municipal wastewater effluent, parking lot runoff, construction site runoff, seepage from septic systems, and other nonpoint sources (Elmore et al., 1985).

A stakeholder committee (the Summit County Phosphorus Policy Committee) was established to develop a strategy for protection of water quality in the reservoir. The Committee included representatives from the towns, the county, the sanitation districts, the Denver Water Department, a ski area and a mining company. The newly formed Committee established a goal of maintaining the 1982 water quality in Dillon Reservoir. This corresponded to an in-lake phosphorus concentration of 7.4 µg/l during the algal growing season of July through October, adjusted to 1982 hydrologic conditions. Based on this goal, a control regulation was established by the State's Water Quality Control Commission in 1984 which included an in-lake phosphorus standard, a wasteload allocation, and language acknowledging local land use regulations for the control of nonpoint source phosphorus loads.

The four municipal wastewater dischargers to the reservoir installed advanced treatment equipment to control phosphorus, and the wasteload allocation was developed based on build out projection flows and a phosphorus effluent concentration of 0.2 mg/l (the plants are currently discharging less than 0.05 mg/l phosphorus).

The phosphorus standard served as numerical basis for back-calculating the necessary load reductions to achieve the desired conditions at zoned "build-out" of the basin. The overall strategy requires a "2 for 1" credit between nonpoint source phosphorus reductions and point source wasteload allocation increases, effective erosion and sediment control practices, mitigation for increases in nonpoint source phosphorus loading from new development, and the use of CDPS (Colorado Discharge Permit System) permits for enforcement if necessary.

There have been three approved applications for phosphorus credits to wasteload allocations to date. It is likely that the main reason that more projects for phosphorus credits have not occurred is due to the fairly large buffer between the wastewater treatment plants' existing annual loads and their wasteload allocations. The buffer was created by the extremely efficient operations of the wastewater treatment plants.

The reservoir continues to be monitored by the Summit Water Quality Committee (SWQC), which is funded by its participants - the towns, county, and sanitation districts. The

SWQC has developed a Phosphorus Accounting System, which was developed to address the concern that the model developed as part of the Clean Lakes study continues to project that at "build out" of basin, phosphorus loads will exceed the in-lake standard. The County is using it's land use authority to require pound-for-pound mitigation of increased phosphorus loads from increases in zoning density during the Planned Unit Development process.

The reservoir continues to meet it's phosphorus standard and chlorophyll *a* goal.

10. Interim Phosphorus Standards for the Everglades

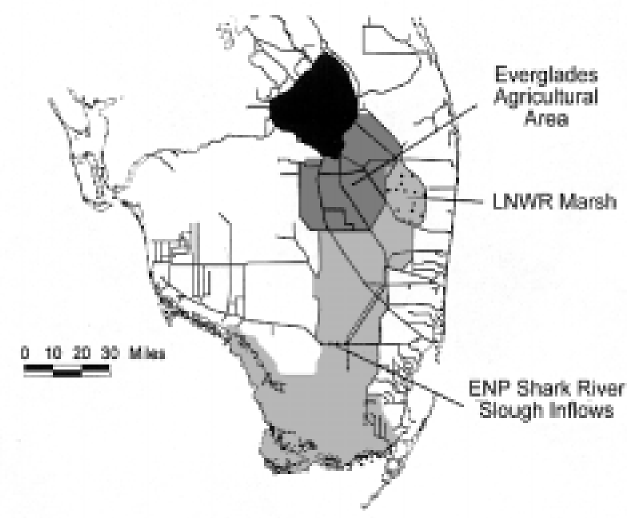
by William W. Walker, Jr.

Eutrophication induced by anthropogenic phosphorus loads poses a long-term threat to Everglades ecosystems. Substantial shifts in macrophyte and microbial communities have been observed in regions located downstream of agricultural discharges (Belanger et al., 1989; Nearhoof, 1992; Davis, 1994). This problem developed over a period of three decades following construction of the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project and drainage of wetland areas south of Lake Okeechobee to support intensive agriculture (**Figure 1**).

In 1988, a lawsuit was filed by the federal government against the local regulatory agencies (Florida Department of Environmental Regulation and South Florida Water Management District (SFWMD)) for not enforcing water quality standards in Loxahatchee National Wildlife Refuge (LNWR) and Everglades National Park (ENP). The lawsuit ended in an out-of-court Settlement Agreement (SA) (USA et al., 1991) and federal consent decree in 1992.

The SA establishes interim and long-term requirements for water quality, control technology, and research. Generally, interim standards and controls are designed based upon existing data and known technologies The interim control program includes implementation of agricultural Best Management Practices (BMP's) and construction of wetland Stormwater Treatment Areas (STA's) to reduce phosphorus loads from the Everglades Agricultural Area (EAA) by approximately 80 percent, relative to a 1979-1988 baseline.

Subsequently, SFWMD adopted the EAA Regulatory Rule (SFWMD, 1992; Whalen & Whalen, 1994), which requires implementation of BMP's in the EAA to achieve an annual-average phosphorus load reduction at least 25 percent. The State of Florida (1994) passed the Everglades Forever Act, which defines a construction project and funding mechanism for STA's. Interim phosphorus standards will apply after interim control technologies are in place (1999-2006 for LNWR and 2003-2006 for ENP Shark Slough Inflows). Long-term standards



(>2006) and control technologies will be developed over a period of several years and require a substantial research effort to develop supporting data.

Specific statistical procedures for tracking progress of the restoration effort and for determining compliance with interim and long-term objectives are built into the Settlement Agreement, EAA Regulatory Rule, and Everglades Forever Act. These procedures provide measures of performance which are important from technical, political, and legal perspectives. This report describes the general model upon which these procedures are based. Specific applications include:

- P standards for inflows to ENP (2 basins)
- P standards for marsh stations in LNWR
- Load-reduction requirements for the EAA

Each tracking procedure was developed within the constraints of historical data to accomplish a specific objective. They share a model structure which is generally applicable in situations where historical monitoring data are to be used as a frame of reference for interpreting current and/or future monitoring data. This would be the case when the management goal is to restore the system to its historical condition, to prevent degradation beyond its current condition, or to require improvement relative to its historical or current condition. This paper describes the model and its application to ENP Shark River Slough inflows. Other applications are briefly summarized.

A. General Model

Explicit consideration of variability is the key to formulating a valid tracking procedure. Procedures are developed by calibrating the following general model to historical data:

Response = Average + Temporal Effect + Hydrologic Effect + Random Effect (1)

The Response is the measurement to be tracked (e.g., concentration or load, averaged over appropriate spatial and temporal scales, linear or log-transformed). The Average represents the mean value of the Response during the calibration period. The Temporal Effect represents a long-term trend in the historical data (if present); this may reflect anthropogenic influences (e.g., land development, new point-source discharges, etc.). The Hydrologic Effect represents correlations of the Response with other measured variables, such as flow, water level, and/or rainfall (if present). The Random Effect is essentially an error term which represents all other sources of variance, including sampling error, analytical error, and variance sources not reflected in the Temporal or Hydrologic terms.

As demonstrated below, inclusion of Temporal and Hydrologic terms increases the statistical power of the tracking procedure (reduces risk of Type I and Type II errors). These terms can be excluded in situations where long-term trends are not present or where significant correlations between the response variable and hydrologic variables cannot be identified. In such a situation, the response would be treated as a purely random variable and the model would be identical to that described by Smeltzer et al, (1989) for tracking long-term variations in lake water quality. The model can be expanded to include multiple Hydrologic Effects, interactions between Temporal and Hydrologic Effects, as well as other deterministic terms. Seasonal Effects (if present) can be considered by adding another term or eliminated by defining the Response as an annual statistic (average, median, etc.).

The model is not constrained to any particular mathematical form. For example, Hydrologic Effects can be predicted by a simulation model, provided that uncertainty associated with such predictions (Random Effects) can be quantified. The applications described below invoke relatively simple, multiple regression models which provide direct estimates of parameter uncertainty. The Hydrologic term provides a basis for adjusting historical and future monitoring data back to an average hydrologic condition, so that changes in the long-term mean (typically reflecting anthropogenic influences) can be tracked and not confused with random climatologic variability (e.g., wet-year vs dry-year differences).

Table 1 outlines three applications of the model to the Everglades. Data from a consistent, long-term monitoring program are desirable for calibrating and applying the model . Ideal data sets are rarely encountered, however, particularly if historical monitoring programs were not designed explicitly to collect data for this purpose. Everglades applications are based upon data sets ranging from 7 to 11 years in duration with monitoring frequencies ranging from biweekly to monthly. One strength of the data is that sampling and analyses have been consistently performed by a single agency (SFWMD). The following sections describe calibration and application of the model to ENP Shark River Slough inflows.

B. Model Calibration to Historical Monitoring Data

Interim standards for ENP Shark River Slough were designed to provide annual, flow-weighted-mean concentrations equivalent to those measured between March 1, 1978 and March 1, 1979, the legally-established base period consistent with ENP’s designation as an Outstanding Florida Water (OFW). Analysis of monitoring data collected between December 1977 and September 1989 collected at 5 inflow structures (S12A,B,C,D & S333) revealed significant increasing trends in phosphorus concentrations and negative correlations between concentration and flow (Walker, 1991). To reduce possible influences of season and shifts in the flow distribution across the 5 inflow structures, the annual-average, flow-weighted-mean concentration across all 5 structures was selected as a response variable and basis for the interim standard. Annual values for Water Years 1978-1990 (October-September) were used to calibrate a regression model of the following form:

$$Y = Ym + b1\ (T - Tm) + b2\ (Q - Qm) + E \qquad (2)$$

where,

Y = observed annual, flow-weighted-mean concentration (ppb)
T =water year (1978-1990)
Q =basin total flow (1000 acre-ft/yr)
E =random error term
m =subscript denoting average value of Y, T, or Q in calibration period

Prior to calibration, biweekly concentration data used to calculate annual flow-weighted means were screened for outliers from a log-normal distribution while accounting for correlations between concentration and flow (Snedocor & Cochran, 1989); a single sample was rejected on this basis. Data from Water Years 1985 and 1986 were excluded from the calibration because of unusual operating conditions which promoted discharge of high-phosphorus canal flows (vs. marsh sheet flows) through the inflow structures. The flow-weighted-mean concentrations were 33 and 21 ppb, respectively, as compared with a range of 7 to 18 in other Water Years. These unusual operating conditions are not expected to be repeated in the future.

Table 1. Model applications to Everglades

Location	Everglades Agricultural Area	ENP Shark Slough Inflows	Loxahatchee National Wildlife Refuge
Reference	EAA Regulatory Rule (1992) Whalen & Whalen (1994)	Interim Standards Settlement Agreement (1991)	Interim Standards Settlement Agreement (1991)
Objective	25% Load Reduction vs. Oct 1979 - Sept 1988	1978-1979 Conditions; Baseline Period for Outstanding Florida Waters	1978-1979 Conditions; Baseline Period for Outstanding Florida Waters
Response Variable	Total P Load	Total P Concentration	Total P Concentration
Temporal Averaging	May-April Water Year	Flow-Weighted Mean Sept-Oct Water Year	Monthly
Spatial Averaging	Total EAA thru 18 Structures, Adjusted for Inputs from Other Basins & Releases from Lake Okeechobee	Combined Inflows from 5 Structures in Shark River Slough	Geometric Mean Across 14 Marsh Stations
Calibration Period	May 1979-April 1988 9 Water Years 2058 Samples	Oct 1977 - Sept 1990 11 Water Years 222 Sampling Dates 1115 Samples	July 1978- July 1983 14 Sampling Rounds 191 Samples
Samples Excluded	3 Statistical Outliers	Oct 1984-Sept 1986 (2 Water Years, Unusual Operation) 1 Statistical Outlier	2 Dates with Mean Stage < 15.42 ft. (Missing Values; Marsh Sampling Difficult)
Temporal Effect	None	Linear Trend	Step Change after Base Period
Hydrologic Effect(s)	Basin Rainfall, 9 Stations Thiessen Average Rainfall Statistics: - Annual Total - CV of Monthly Totals - Skewness of Mo. Totals	Basin Total Flow Total thru 5 Structures	Stage (Water Surface Elev.) Average of 3 Stations
Transformation	Natural Logarithm	None	Natural Logarithm
Variance Explained	90%	80%	67%
Residual Std Error	0.18 (~18%)	1.87 ppb (~16%)	0.31 (~31%)
Base Period	Water Years 1980-1988	Water Years 1978 -1979	June 1978 - May 1979 First Full Year of Data
Target	75% of Base Period (25% Load Reduction)	100% of Base Period	100% of Base Period
Limit	90th Percentile	90th Percentile	90th Percentile
Exceedence Condition	> Limit in Any Year, or > Target in >=3 Consec. Yrs	>Limit in Any Year	> Limit in >1 Month in Any Consecutive 12 Month Pd.

Table 2 lists calibration data and results. The model explains 80% of the variance in the historical data set with a residual standard error of 1.87 ppb. The fit is illustrated in **Figure 2**. Figure 2A plots observed and predicted concentrations against time. The 80 percent prediction interval (10th, 50th, and 90th percentiles) are shown in relation to the observed data. Both regression slopes are significant at $p < .05$. The partial regression concept (Snedocor & Cochran, 1989) is applied below to illustrate the importance of each term in the model.

The concentration measured in any year (Y) can be adjusted back to an average flow condition (Qm) using the following equation for flow-adjusted concentration (YQ):

Figure 2

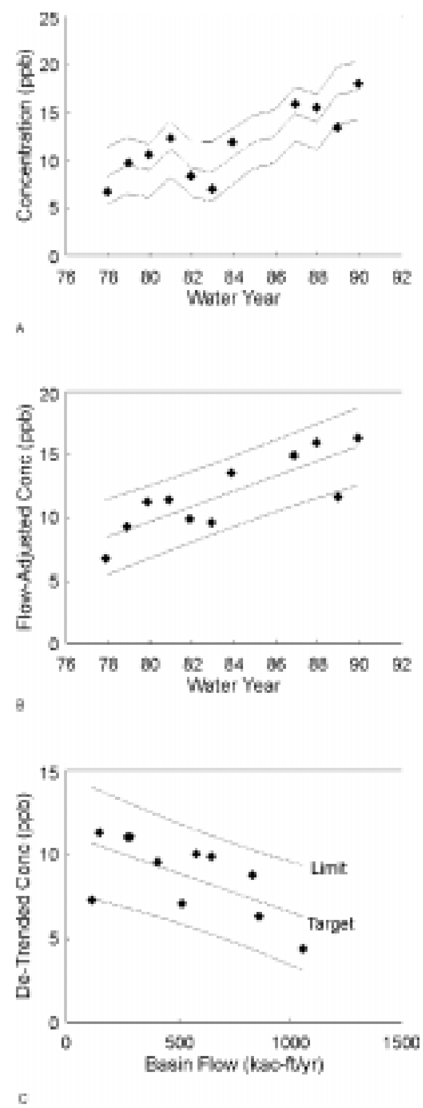


Table 2. Derivation of interim standards for ENP Shark River Slough inflows.

Water Year	Basin Flow kac-ft/yr	Flow-Weighted-Mean Total P Concentration Observed ppb	Predicted ppb	Flow-Adjusted ppb	De-Trended ppb	50% Target ppb	90% Limit ppb
78	522.8	6.7	8.4	6.7	7.0	8.4	11.7
79	407.0	9.8	9.6	9.2	9.5	9.0	12.3
80	649.2	10.6	9.0	11.2	9.7	9.6	11.1
81	291.7	12.4	11.3	11.4	11.0	10.2	12.9
82	861.3	8.4	9.2	10.0	6.3	10.8	10.1
83	1061.3	7.0	8.9	9.5	4.4	11.4	9.4
84	842.8	12.0	10.5	13.4	8.7	12.0	10.2
87	276.6	15.9	14.9	14.8	10.9	13.8	13.0
88	585.5	15.6	14.1	15.9	10.0	14.4	11.4
89	116.9	13.5	16.9	11.6	7.3	15.0	14.0
90	148.2	18.1	17.3	16.3	11.2	15.6	13.8
Mean	523.9	11.8	11.8	11.8	8.7	8.7	11.8

Variables:

Y = Observed TP (ppb) Q = Observed Flow (kac-ft/yr)
T = Water Year E = Random Error (ppb)
b_1, b_2 = Regression Slopes SE = Regression Standard Error of Estimate (ppb)
m = subscript denoting mean value

Regression Model:

$$Y = Y_m + b_1 (T - T_m) + b_2 (Q - Q_m) + E$$
$$= 11.8 + 0.5932 (T - 83.7) - 0.00465 (Q - 523.9) + E$$

Regression Results:

$R^2 = 0.80$	SE = 1.873 ppb	Y_m = 11.8 ppb	T_m = 83.7
Q_m = 523.9 kac-ft/yr	b_1 = 0.5932	$Var(b_1)$ = 0.02366	$b_2 = -0.00465$
$Var(b_2)$ = -0.0046	$Cov(b_1,b_2) = 0.00013$	$t_{,dof} = 1.397$	n = 11

Y_Q = Flow-Adjusted TP $= Y + b_2 (Q_m - Q) = Y - 0.00465 (523.9 - Q)$

Y_T = De-Trended TP $= Y + b_1 (T_o - T) = Y + 0.5932 (78.5 - T)$

Target $= Y_m + b_1 (78.5 - T_m) + b_2 (Q - Q_m) = 11.16 - 0.00465 Q$

Limit = Target + S $t_{,dof} = 11.16 - 0.00465 Q + 1.397 S$

$$S = [SE^2 (1 + 1/n) + Var(b_1) (T_o - T_m)^2 + Var(b_2) (Q_c - Q_m)^2 + 2 Cov(b_1,b_2) (78.5 - T_m)(Q_c - Q_m)]^{0.5}$$

$$= [6.377 - 0.00591 Q + 0.00000436 Q^2]^{0.5}$$

YQ =Y + b2 (Qm - Q)(3)

Figure 2B plots observed and predicted flow-adjusted concentrations against time. The long-term trend is more readily apparent in this display because effects of flow variations have been filtered out.

Similarly, the concentration in any year can be adjusted back to any base period (To) using the following equation for a time-adjusted or de-trended concentration (YT):

YT = Y + b1 (To - T)(4)

In this case, a base period value of To = 78.5 is used to represent the 1978-1979 OFW time frame. Using this equation, Figure 2C plots observed and predicted time-adjusted concentrations against flow. The inverse correlation between concentration and flow is apparent. The figure shows the predicted relationship between concentration and flow if long-term mean were equivalent to that experienced in 1978-1979.

The model can be used to evaluate the likelihood that current monitoring results (Yc, Qc) are equivalent to the 1978-1979 base period, while accounting for hydrologic and random variability. This is accomplished using the following terms which characterize the prediction interval for a 1978-1979 time frame under a given flow condition:

Target =Ym + b1 (To - Tm) + b2 (Qc - Qm)(5)

Limit =Target + S t ,dof (6)

S =[SE2 (1 + 1/n) + Var(b1) (To - Tm)2 + Var(b2) (Qc - Qm)2 +
2 Cov(b1,b2) (78.5 - Tm)(Qc - Qm)].5 (7)

where,

Target = 50th Percentile of Prediction Interval = Predicted Mean (ppb)
Limit=90th Percentile of Prediction Interval (ppb)
S=Standard Error of Predicted Value (ppb)
SE=Regression Standard Error of Estimate (ppb)
t=One-tailed Student's t statistic
=Significance Level = 0.10
dof =Degrees of Freedom = n - 3
n=Number of Years in Calibration Data Set = 11
Var=Variance Operator
Cov=Covariance Operator

In Figure 2C, the Target and Limit lines correspond to the 50th and 90th percentile predictions, respectively. The required parameter estimates and variance/covariance terms are derived from a standard multiple regression analysis. If the current long-term flow-weighted-mean is less than the 1978-1979 long-term mean (adjusted for hydrologic effects), there would be less than a 50 perent chance that the yearly mean (Yc) would exceed the Target and less than a 10 perent chance that Yc would exceed the Limit. The difference between the Target and Limit reflects the magnitude of the Random Effects term and uncertainty in model parameter estimates (b1, b2, Ym).

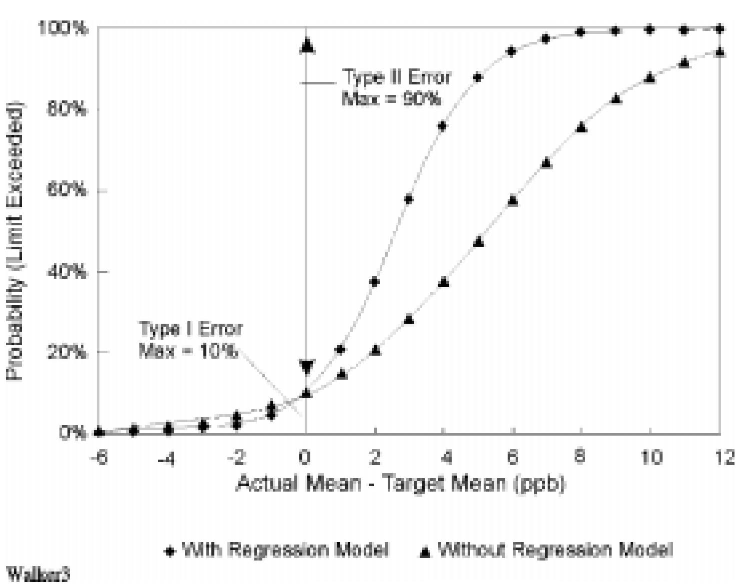
(c) Type I and Type II Errors

Under the terms of the Settlement Agreement, an exceedence of the Limit in any year would trigger further scientific investigations which, in turn, may lead to implementation of additional phosphorus control measures. The significance level for the compliance test (.10) represents the maximum Type-I error rate (probability of exceeding the Limit if the future and 1978-1979 long-term means are exactly equal). Unless a model can be constructed to explain all of the variance in the data, there is no way to design a compliance test without explicitly adopting a maximum Type-I error. In this case, the .10 value was arrived at by negotiation and with the understanding that results of the test would be interpreted by a scientific panel in light of the inherent risk of Type I error.

Type II error (failure to detect an exceedence or excursion from the standard) is another unavoidable feature of compliance tests. In this case, a Type II error would occur when the actual long-term mean exceeds the 1978-1979 flow-adjusted mean but the measured annual mean is still below the Limit. Risk of Type II error depends upon the specified maximum Type I error (10%), model error variance (Random Effects Term), and the magnitude of the excursion from the long-term mean.

Figure 3 illustrates Type I and Type II error concepts. The probability that the annual mean exceeds the Limit is plotted against the difference between the actual long-term mean and the target. Probabilities are calculated using standard statistical procedures (Snedecor & Cochran, 1989; Walker,1989). Type I errors (false exceedence) may occur when the actual long-term mean is below the target. The risk of Type I error equals the probability shown on the left-hand side in Figure 4 and has maximum value of 10 percent (by design). Type II errors (failure to detect exceedence) may occur when the actual mean exceeds the target. The risk of Type II error equals 100 percent minus the probability shown on the right-hand side of Figure 4 and has a maximum value of 90 percent. As deviation from the target increases, risks of Type I and Type II errors decrease.

Figure 3



Probability curves are shown for two values of residual standard error in Figure 3. Without applying the regression model, the Random Effects term in the model would have a standard deviation of 3.73 ppb (= standard deviation of annual flow-weighted-means in the calibration period). With the regression model, the standard deviation is reduced to 1.87 ppb. Removing variance associated with trend and flow increases the probability of exceeding the Limit when the long-term mean exceeds the target. For example, if the true long-term mean were 5 ppb above the target, the probability of detecting an excursion (measured annual value above Limit) would be ~90 percent with the regression model, but only ~50 percent without the regression model. Risk of Type I error when the actual mean is below the target is also lower with the regression model. The regression approach thus enables a more powerful compliance test than would result from treating the calibration data set as a random time series.

(d) Model Application to Recent Monitoring Data

Figure 4 shows monitoring results for the Water Years 1991-1996 (6 years following the 1978-1990 calibration period). Although interim standards will not be enforced until 2003, the procedure is useful for tracking responses to control measures implemented over the 1991-2002 period. Such measures include adoption of the EAA Regulatory Rule (requiring a 25% reduction in EAA phosphorus load) in 1992 and operation of the Everglades Nutrient Removal Project (ENR, pilot scale STA removing an additional ~9% percdent of the EAA phosphorus load, Guardo et al. (1995), SFMWD (1997)) starting in August 1994.

Figure 4A shows observed values before and after the calibration period in relation to the 80% prediction interval derived from the above regression model. Values in Figure 4A reflect both long-term trend and flow variations. Observed values in 1992-1996 fall near the lower boundary of the 80% prediction interval (10th percentile).

Figure 4B shows flow-adjusted concentrations (equation 3) in relation to the 80% prediction interval. The prediction interval extrapolates the increasing trend in the 1978-1990 data to the later years. Theoretically, flow-related variations are filtered from this time series, so that observed and predicted values reflect variations in the long-term mean. The plot suggests that the increasing trend present during the calibration period has been arrested in recent years.

Figure 4C plots concentrations against flow in relation to the 80 percent prediction interval for 1978-1979 conditions. Observed values during the 1978-1991 calibration period have been adjusted to the 1978-1979 time frame (equation 4). The middle and upper values in the prediction interval correspond to the Target and Limit values at any flow. Compliance with the interim standards (when they are in effect) will require that the observed (un-adjusted) flow-weighted mean fall below the Limit line in every year.

Discussion

Extremely wet conditions experienced in recent years relative to the calibration period impose significant limitations on tracking results. Figure 5 plots annual basin flow against time. Flow exceeded the maximum value experienced in the base period (1061 kac-ft/yr) in 3 out of 6 Water Years after 1990. In these cases, the model is being extrapolated beyond the range of the calibration data set. The extrapolation is particularly large in Water Year 1995, when the average flow exceeded the calibration maximum by approximately 2.5-fold. Because of the extrapolation into high flow regimes, the model does not provide reliable assessments in recent wet years. Nonetheless, the model does provide the best currently-available scientific assessment of long-term trends in phosphorus at these structures.

FIGURE 4

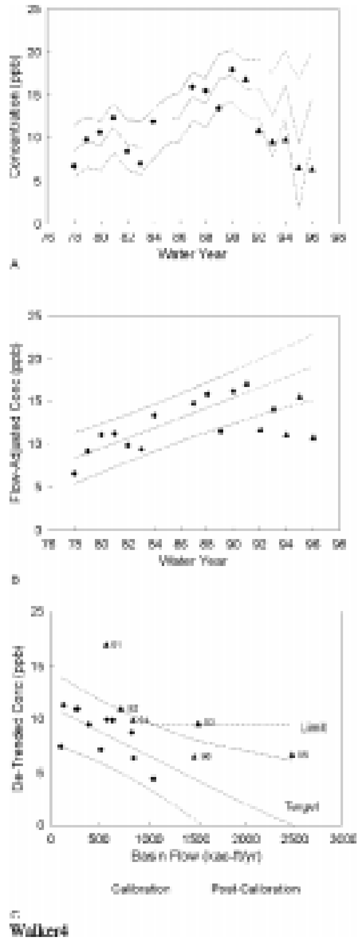


Figure 4B suggests that the increasing trend in the long-term mean present prior to 1991 has been arrested in years following adoption of the EAA Regulatory Rule in 1992 and operation of the ENR in 1994. For the 6-year period between May 1992 and April 1997, the tracking procedure for EAA phosphorus load (Table 1) indicates an average load reduction of 46% relative to the May 1979-April 1988 base period for the Rule and adjusted for variations in rainfall. Figure 6 shows annual variations in phosphorus concentration and adjusted load from the EAA. Compared with the model discussed above, the model for tracking EAA phosphorus loads is calibrated to a slightly different base period and employs a different Water Year definition (May-April). A regression against rainfall statistics (Table 1) is used to adjust measured loads to average hydrologic conditions during the base period. The accuracy of EAA adjusted load estimates is also limited by wet conditions experienced in recent years, however.

EAA runoff concentrations are not adjusted because they are weakly correlated with rainfall. Prediction intervals for concentration are derived by assuming that the Random-Effects term of the model follows a log-normal distribution calibrated to base- period results.

Other possible factors contributing to water quality improvements at ENP inflows during recent wet years include (1) increased phosphorus retention under high-stage conditions in the

Water Conservation Areas and (2) shifts in the distribution of flow across the Tamiami Trail. A higher percentage of flow is released through the S12's (western) as opposed to S333 (eastern) in wet years because of flow-control constraints in the Eastern Everglades. Historically, P concentrations at S333 have been higher than those at measured at the S12's, because flows passing through S333 contain a higher percentage of canal flow (vs. marsh sheet flow). Because of limitations in the tracking methodology during recent wet years, several years of monitoring under average and dry conditions will provide a more reliable assessment of ENP inflow water quality conditions in relation to the 1978-1979 OFW period.

Despite signs of improvement, it is unlikely that the interim control objective for ENP Shark Slough inflows has been achieved, since the flow-adjusted means in recent years are consistently above the 1978-1979 flow-adjusted mean (~ 8 ppb, Figures 2B, 4B). Observed concentrations in 1992-1996 cluster around the Limit line in Figure 4C. If the interim objectives were achieved, the observed values would be expected to cluster around the Target line (center of distribution).

Under the provisions of the Settlement Agreement, the maximum flow during the calibration period (1061 kac-ft/yr) will be used to calculate the Limit in years when the observed flow exceeds that value. This essentially prevents extrapolation of the regression beyond the calibration range. The dashed line in Figure 3C shows the Limit calculated according to this procedure. One could argue whether this procedure provides a better estimate of the 90th percentile at high flows than the extrapolated (solid) line. The distribution of observed values after 1991 is such that the determination of “compliance” (if the standard were in effect) would be influenced only in the case of the extreme high-flow year (1995). In the remaining years, the system would have been in compliance in 2 out of 5 years (1994 and 1996), regardless of which limit line is used.

References

Belanger, T.V., D. J. Scheidt, J.R. Platko II, “Effects of Nutrient Enrichment on the Florida Everglades”, Lake and Reservoir Management, Volume 5, No. 1, pp. 101-111, 1989.

Davis, S.M., “Phosphorus Inputs and Vegetation Sensitivity in the Everglades”, in Everglades - The Ecosystem and Its Restoration, S.M. Davis and J.C. Ogden (Editors), St. Lucie Press, Florida, pp. 357-378, 1994.

Guardo, M., L. Fink, T.D. Fontaine, S. Newman, M. Chimney, R. Bearzotti, G. Goforth, “Large-Scale Constructed Wetlands for Nutrient Removal from Stormwater Runoff: An Everglades Restoration Project”, Environmental Management, Volume 19, No. 6, pp. 879-889, 1995.

Nearhoof, F.L., “Nutrient-Induced Impacts and Water Quality Violations in the Florida Everglades”, Florida Department of Environmental Protection, Water Quality Technical Series, Volume 3, Number 4. 1992.

Smeltzer, E., W.W. Walker, and V. Garrison, “Eleven Years of Lake Eutrophication Monitoring in Vermont: A Critical Evaluation”, in “Enhancing States’ Lake Management Programs”, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and North American Lake Management Society, pp. 52-62, 1989.

Snedocor, G.W. and W.G. Cochran. “Statistical Methods”, Iowa State University Press, Ames, Iowa, Eighth Edition, 1989.

South Florida Water Management District, ”Surface Water Improvement and Management Plan for The Everglades, Appendix E, Derivation of Phosphorus Limits for Everglades National Park and Phosphorus Levels for Loxahatchee National Wildlife Refuge”, West Palm Beach, Florida, March 13, 1992.

South Florida Water Management District, “Works of the District, Chapter 40-E63, Everglades Agricultural Area Regulatory Program”, West Palm Beach, Florida, 1992.

South Florida Water Management District, “Everglades Nutrient Removal Project, 1996 Monitoring Report”, submitted to Florida Department of Environmental Protection, March 1997.

State of Florida, “Everglades Forever Act”, 1994.

United States of America, South Florida Water Management District, Florida Department of Environmental Regulation, “Settlement Agreement”, Case No. 88-1886-CIV-HOEVELER, July 1991.

Walker, W.W., "LRSD.WK1 - Lake/Reservoir Sampling Design Worksheet", Software Package Number 3, North American Lake Management Society, 1989.

Walker, W.W., “Derivation of Phosphorus Limits for Inflows to Everglades National Park”, prepared for U.S. Department of Justice, Environment and Natural Resources Division, May 1991.

Walker, W.W., “Derivation of Phosphorus Limits for Loxahatchee National Wildlife Refuge”, prepared for U.S. Department of Justice, Environment and Natural Resources Division, May 1991.

Walker, W.W., “Water Quality Trends at Inflows to Everglades National Park”, Water Resources Bulletin, Volume 27, No. 1, pp. 59-72, 1991.

Whalen, B.M. and P.J. Whalen, “Nonpoint Source Regulatory Program for the Everglades Agricultural Area”, American Society of Agricultural Engineers, Paper Number FL94-101, 1994.

References

ADF Minnesota Rules Chapter 7050. 1993. Standards for the protection of the quality and purity of waters of the state. Revisors of Statutes and the Minnesota Pollution Control Agency, St. Paul, MN.

Ahlgren, G. 1970. Limnological studies of Lake Norviken, a eutrophicated Swedish lake. II. Phytoplankton and its production. Schweiz Z. Hydrol. 32:353-396.

Arruda, J.A. and C.H. Fromm. 1988a. The relationships among trihalomethane formation potential, organic carbon, and lake trophic state in eastern Kansas drinking water supply lakes. Report of the Water Quality Assessment Section, Bureau of Water Protection, Kansas Department of Health and Environment. 41 pp.

Baker, J. R., D. V. Peck, and D. W. Sutton (editors). 1997. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program Surface Waters: Field operations manual for lakes. EPA/620/R-97/001. U. S. EPA, Washington, D.C.

Bannerman et al. 1993.

Barbour et al. 1996.

Barica, J. 1981. Hypereutrophy–the ultimate stage of eutrophication. Environment Canada, WHO Water Quality Bulletin, 6(4): 95-98, 155-156.

Bartsch, A. F. and Gakstatter, J.H. 1978. Management Decisions for Lake Systems on a Survey of Trophic Status, Limiting Nutrients, and Nutrient Loadings in American-Soviet Symposium on Use of Mathematical Models to Optimize Water Quality Management, 1975, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Office of Research and Development, Environmental Research Laboratory, Gulf Breeze, FL, pp. 372-394. EPA-600/9-78-024.

Birks, H. J. B., S. Juggins, and J. M. Line. 1990. Lake surface-water chemistry reconstructions from paleolimnological data, p.301-313. In B. J. Mason (ed.), The Surface Waters Acidification Programme. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Canfield, D. and R. Bachmann. 1981. Prediction of total phosphorus concentrations, chlorophyll-a, and Secchi depths in natural and artificial lakes. Can. Jour Fish. Aquat. Sci. 38: 414-423.

Canfield, D. 1983.

Canfield et al. 1983.

Carlson, R.E. 1977. A trophic state index for lakes. Limnology and Oceanography 22: 361-369.

Carlson, R.E. 1980.

Carlson, R. E. 1980b.

Carlson, R.E. 1983.

Carlson, R. E. 1991. Expanding the trophic state concept to identify non-nutrient limited lakes and reservoirs. Pages 59-71 in Enhancing the State's Lake Management Programs: Proceedings of a conference. Chicago, 1991. North American Lake Management Society.

Carlson, R.E. 1992.

Carlson, R. E., D. Waller, and J. Lee. The 1997 great American secchi dip-in. Lakeline 18:36-40.

Carpenter. 19..... (V-7)

Carpenter, S.R., Lodge, D.M. 1986. Effects of Submersed Macrophytes on Ecosystem ProcessesAquatic Botany: 341-370.

Chapra, S.C. 19..... (V-14)

Chapra, S.C. 1975.
Chapra, S.C. 1980.
Chapra, S.C. (1997) Surface Water-Quality Modeling, McGraw-Hill, New York, NY
Chapra, S.C. and Canale, R.P. (1988) Numerical methods for engineers, 2nd. ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, NY
Chapra, S.C., Canale, R.P. and Amy, G.L. (1997) Empirical models for disinfection by-products in lakes and reservoirs. J. Environ. Engr. ASCE (to appear July 1997).
Chapra, S.C. and Reckhow, K.H. (1983) Engineering approaches for lake management, Vol. 2: Mechanistic modeling. Ann Arbor Science/Butterworth, Woburn, Mass., Chap. 15.
Charles, D. F. and J. P. Smol. 1994. Long-term chemical changes in lakes: quantitative inferences from biotic remains in the sediment record, p. 1-31. In L. Baker (ed.), Environmental chemistry of lakes and reservoirs. Advances in Chemistry Series 237. American Chemical Society, Washington,D.C.
Charles, D. F., J. P. Smol, and D. R. Engstrom. 1994. Paleolimnological approaches to biological monitoring, p. 233-293. In L. L. Loeb and A. Spacie (ed.), Biological monitoring of aquaticsystems. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL
Chen, C.W. (1970) "Concepts and utilities of ecological models," J. San. Engr. Div. ASCE 96(SA5):1085-1086.
Chen and Orlob. 1975.
Colby, P.J. and L.T. Brooke. 1969. Cisco (Coregonus artedii) mortalities in a southern Michigan Lake, July 1968. Limnol. Oceanogr. 14:958-960.
Cole and Buchak. 1995.
Conquest et al. 1994.
Cooke and Carlson. 1987.
Cooke, G.D. and R.E. Carlson. 19..... Water quality management in a drinking water reservoir. Lake and Reservoir Management. 2: 363-371.
Cooke, G.D. and R.E. Carlson. 1989. Reservoir management for Water Quality and THM Precursor Control. American Water Works Research Association.
Cornett and Rigler. 1979.
Courtemanch, D. L., S. P. Davies, and E. B. Laverty. 1989. Incorporation of biological information in water quality planning. Environmental Management 13(1):35-41.
Davies, S. P., L. Tsomides, D. L. Courtemanch, and F. Drummond. 1993. Maine Biological Monitoring and Biocriteria Development Program. Maine Department of Environmental Protection, Bureau of Water Quality Control, Division of Environmental Evaluation and Lake Studies. Augusta, Maine.
Di Toro, D.M. and Fitzpatrick, J.J. 1993. Chesapeake Bay Sediment Flux Model. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station, Tech. Report EL-93-2.
Di Toro, D.M., Paquin, P.R., Subburamu, K. and Gruber, D.A. 1990. “Sediment Oxygen Demand Model: Methane and Ammonia Oxidation.” J. Environ. Engr. ASCE 116(5):945-986.
Di Toro, D.M., Thomann, R.V. and O'Connor, D.J. (1971) "A dynamic model of phytoplankton population in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta," in Advances in Chemistry Series 106: Nonequilibrium systems in natural water chemistry, R.F. Gould, Ed. (Washington, DC: American Chemical Society), p.131.
Dillon, P.J. and Rigler, F.H. 1974. “The Phosphorus-Chlorophyll Relationship for Lakes.” Limnol. Oceanogr. 19:767-773.
Dillon, P.J. and F.H. Rigler. 1974. A test of a simple nutrient budget model predicting the phosphorus concentration in lake water. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 31:1771-1778.

Dillon, P.J., and Rigler, F.H. 1975. “A Simple Method for Predicting the Capacity of a Lake for Development Based on Lake Trophic Status.” J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 31(9):1519-1531.
Dinar et al. 1995.
Dixit, S. S. and J. P. Smol. 1994. Diatoms as indicators in the Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program - Surface Waters (EMAP - SW). Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 31:275-306.
Dixit, S. S., J. P. Smol, J. C. Kingston, and D. F. Charles. 1992. Diatoms: powerful indicators of environmental change. Environmental Science and Technology 26:23-33.
Edmonson. 1961.
Edmonson. 1972.
Edmonson. 1980.
Edmondson, W.T. 1980. Secchi disk and chlorophyll. Limnol. Oceanogr. 25: 378.
Elser et al. 1990
Fairweather. 1991.
Fee et al. 1994.
Forbes 1887. The lake as a microcosm. Bull. Scient.Assoc. Peoria, 1887: 77-87, reprinted, Illinois Nat. Hist. Surv. 15:537-50Bull. Scient.Assoc. Peoria, 1877-87, reprinted, Illinois Nat. Hist. Surv. 15:537-50
Ford, D. E. 1990. Reservoir transport processes. pp. 15-41 in K. W. Thornton, B. L. Kimmel, and F. E. Payne (Eds.). Reservoir Limnology: Ecological Perspectives. Wiley-Interscience, New York.
Fritz, S. C. 1990. Twentieth century salinity and water level fluctuations in Devils Lake, North Dakota: a test of a diatom based transfer function. Limnology and Oceanography 35: 1771-1781.
Fulmer, D.G. and G.D. Cooke. 1990. Evaluating the restoration potential of 19 Ohio reservoirs. Lake and Reservoir Management. 6: 197-206.
Gardiner, R.D., Auer, M.T., and Canale, R.P. 1984. “Sediment Oxygen Demand in Green Bay (Lake Michigan).” Proc. 1984 Specialty Conf., ASCE, 514-519.
Gerritsen, J., B. Jessup, E. Leppo, and J. White. 1999(in preparation). Development and testing of a biological index for Florida lakes. Prepared for Florida Department of Environmental Protection, Tallahassee, FL.
Glew, J. R. 1988. A portable extruding device for close interval sectioning of unconsolidated core samples. J. Paleolimnol. 1:235-239.
Gliwicz, Z. M. and A. Kowalczewski. 1981. Epilimnetic and hypolimnetic symptoms of eutrophication in Great Mazurian Lakes, Poland. Freshw. Biol. 11: 425433.
Griffith, G. E., D. E. Canfield, Jr., C. A. Horsburgh, J. M. Omernik, S. E. Clarke. 1997. Lake regions of Florida. Map published by Florida DEP and U. S. EPA, Tallahassee, FL.
Hanson, J.J. and H.G. Stefan. 1984. Side effects of 58 years of copper sulfate treatment of the Fairmont Chain of Lakes, MN. Wat. Resour. Bull. 20(6):889-900.
Havens, K.E. 1994. Seasonal and spatial variation in nutrient limitation in a shallow sub-tropical lake (Lake Okeechobee, Florida) as evidenced by trophic state index deviations. Arch Hydrobiol. 131: 39-53.
Havens, K.E. and R.T. Heath. 1991. Increased transparency due to changes in the algal size spectrum during experimental acidification in mesocosms. J. Plankton Res.
Havens and Heath. 1991.
Heiskary, S.A. 1989. Lake assessment program: a cooperative lake study program. Lake Reserv. Manage. 5:85-94.

Heiskary, S. A. 1989. Integrating ecoregion concepts into state lake management programs. 189:89-100 in Proceedings: Enhancing the State's Lake Management Programs. North American Lake Management Society.
Heiskary, S.A. 1997. Lake Prioritization for Protection of Swimmable Use. Minnesota Pollution Control Agency, St. Paul MN.
Heiskary, S.A., C.B. Wilson, and D.P. Larsen. 1987. Analysis of regional patterns in lake water quality: using ecoregions for lake management in Minnesota. Lake Reserv. Manage. 3:337-344.
Heiskary, S.A. and C.B. Wilson. 1988. Minnesota Lake Water Quality Assessment Report. Minnesota Pollution Control Agency, St. Paul.
Heiskary, S. A., and C. B. Wilson. 1989. The regional nature of lake water quality across Minnesota: an analysis for improving resource management. Journal of the Minnesota Academy of Sciences 55:71-77.
Heiskary, S.A. and W.W. Walker, Jr. 1988. Developing phosphorus criteria for Minnesota lakes. Lake Reservoir Management. 4(1):1-10.
Heiskary, S.A. et al. 1994.
Heiskary, S.A. and W.W. Walker, Jr. 1995. Establishing a chlorophyll-a goal for a run-of-the-river reservoir. Lake Reservoir Management. 11(1): 67-76.
Heiskary, S.A. and C.B. Wilson. 1996. Phosphorus export coefficients and the Reckhow-Simpson spreadsheet: Use and application in routine assessments of Minnesota's lakes. A working paper. MPCA, St. Paul, Minnesota.
Hoyer, M. V. and J. R. Jones. 1983. Factors affecting the relation between phosphorous and chlorophyll a in midwestern reservoirs. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science 40:192-199.
Huber, W.C., P.L. Brezonik, and J.P. Heaney. 1982. A classification of Florida lakes. Report to the Florida Department of Environmental Regulation. Report ENV-05-82-1.
Hughes and Larson. 1988.
Hughes et al. 1994.
Hurlbert. 1984.
Hutchinson. 19...... (II-6)
Hutchinson, G.E. 1957. A treatise on limnology. Vol. 1. Geography, physics, and chemistry. John Wiley & Sons.
Hutchinson, G.E. 1965. The laucustrine microcosm reconsidered. In - The Ecological Theater and the Evolutionary Play. Yale University Press 139 p.
Hutchinson, G.E. 1969. Eutrophication, past and present. In: Eutrophication: Causes, Consequences, Correctives. National Academy Sciences.
Jackie .... (III-7)
Jones, J. R. and R. W. Bachmann. 1978. Trophic status of Iowa lakes in relation to orgin and glacial geology. Hydrobiologia 57:267-273.
Jones, J. R. and J. T. Novak. 1981. Limnilogical characteristics of Lake of the Ozarks, Missouri. Verhandlungen Internationale Vereinigung fur Theoretische und Angewandte Limnologie 21:919-925.
Jones et al. 1989.
Jones, J. R. and M. F. Knowlton. 1993. Limnology of Missouri reservoirs: an analysis of regional patterns. Lake and Reservoir Management 8:17-30.
Jongman, R.H.G., C.J.F. ter Braak, and O.F.R. van Tongeren. 1987. Data analysis in community and landscape ecology. Pudoc, Wageningen, The Netherlands
Kanale (Canale?) et al. 1974.

Keeney, D.R. 1979. Prediction of the quality of water in a proposed impoundment in southwestern Wisconsin, USA. Environmental Geology. 2:341-349

Kennedy, R. H., and W. W. Walker. 1990. Reservoir nutrient dynamics. Pages 109-131 in K.W. Thornton, D.L. Kimmel and F.E. Payne, eds. Reservoir limnology: Ecological perspective. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, NY.

Kennedy, R. H., K. W. Thornton, and D. Ford. 1985. Characterization of the reservoir ecosystem. In D. Gunnison, ed. Microbial processes in reservoirs. Dr. W. Junk Publishers, Boston, MA.

Kimmel, B. L., O. T. Lind, and L. J. Paulson. 1990. Reservoir primary production. pp. 133-193 in K. W. Thornton, B. L. Kimmel, and F. E. Payne (Eds.). Reservoir Limnology: Ecological Perspectives. Wiley-Interscience, New York.

Knowlton and Jones. 1989.

Knowlton and Jones. 1996.

Kratzer and Brezonik. 1981.

Kratzer, C.R., and P.L. Brezonik. 1981. A Carlson-type trophic state index for nitrogen in Florida lakes. Water. Res. Bull. 17: 713-715.

Lake Champlain Management Conference. 1996. Opportunities for action. An evolving plan for the future of the Lake Champlain Basin. Pollution prevention, control, and restoration plan. Lake Champlain Basin Program. Grand Isle, VT. 92 pp.

Lake Champlain Phosphorus Management Task Force. May 14, 1993 report prepared for the Lake Champlain Steering Committee. New York State Department of Environmental Conservation, Adirondack Park Agency, Quebec Ministry of the Environment, and Vermont Agency of Natural Resources. 17 pp.

Larsen, D.P. and H.T. Mercier. 1976. Phosphorus retention capacity of lakes. J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can. 33: 1742-1750.

Laws and Chalup. 1990.

Line, J. M., J. F. ter Braak, and H. J. B. Birks. 1994. WACALIB version 3.3-a computer program to reconstruct environmental variables from fossil assemblages by weighted averaging and to derive sample-specific errors of prediction. J. Paleolimnol.10:147-152.

Linthurst, R. A., D. H. Landers, J. M. Eilers, D. F. Brakke, W. S. Overton, E. P. Meier, and R. E. Crowe. 1986. Characteristics of lakes in the eastern United States. Volume #1: Population descriptions and physico-chemical relationships. Office of Research and Development, U. S.

Lung, W and K. Larson. 1995. Water quality modeling of Upper Mississippi River and Lake Pepin. Jour. Env. Engineering 121(10): 691-699.

McCauley et al. 1989.

McCollor and Heiskary. 1993.

Martin, R. G. and R. D. Arneson. 1978. Comparative limnology of a deep-discharge reservoir and a surface-discharge lake on the Madison River, Montana. Freshwater Biology 8:33-42.

Meeuwig and Peters. 1996.

Minnesota Statutes. 1996. Section 115.091 to 115.103 (Supp. 1987) Chapter 7076.0240 Subp. 4c. Authorization for Clean Water Partnership Program. Revisor of Statutes.

Moore, L. and Thorton, K. [Ed.] 1988. Lake and Reservoir Restoration Guidance Manual. EPA 440/5-88-00.

Morris and Lewis. 1988.

Mortimer. 1941.

Moss. 1997.

Moss et al. 1997.

Naumann. 1929.

Naumann, E. 1932. Grundzuge der regionalen limnologie. Binnengwasser 11.
Nixdorf and Deneke. 1997.
North American Lake Management Society. 1992. Developing eutrophication standards for lakes and reservoirs. Report prepared by the Lake Standards Subcommittee. Alachua, FL. 51 pp.
Novotny and Olem. 1994.
Nurnberg. 1996.
O'Brien. 1990.
OECD. 1982
OEPA. 1987.
Oglesby, R. T. 1977. Relationships of fish yield to lake phytoplankton standing crop, production, and morphoedaphic factors. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 34:(12)2271-2279.
Oglesby, R.T., J.H. Leach, and J. Forney. 1987. Potential Stizostedion yield as a function of chlorophyll concentration with special reference to Lake Erie. Can. J. Fish. Aquat Sci. 44(Suppl. 2): 166-170.
Olem and Flocks (eds.). 1990.
O'melia. 1972.
Omernik, J.M. 1976. The influence of land use on stream nutrient levels. EPA-600/3-76-014.
Omernik, J.M. 1987. Ecoregions of the conterminous United States. Annals. Assoc. Amer. Geogr. 77(1):118-125.
Omernik. 1988.
Omernik. 1991.
Omernik, J. M. 19..... (IV-7)
Omernik, J. M. and R. G. Baily. 1997. Distinguishing between watersheds and ecoregions. Journal of the American Water Resources Association 33:935-949.
Omernik, J. M., D. P. Larsen, C. M. Rohm, and S. E. Clarke. 1988. Summer total phosphorus in lakes: a map of Minnesota, Wisconisin, and Michigan, USA. Environmental Management 12:815-825.
Osgood, R. A., 1988. Lake mixis and internal phosporous dynamics. Archiv fur Hydrobiologie 113:629-638.
Palmstrom, N.S., R.E. Carlson, and G.D. Cooke. 1988. Potential links between eutrophication and the formation of carcinogens in drinking water. Lake Reserv. Manage. 4(2)1-16.
Panuska, J.C., N. Booth, and A. Wilson. 1994. Wisconsin Lake Model Spreadsheet Version 2.00. Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources. Madison, WI
Paulsen, S.G., D.P. Larsen, P.R. Kaufmann, T.R. Whittier, J.R. Baker, D. Peck, J. McGue, R.M. Hughes, D. McMullen, D. Stevens, J.L. Stoddard, J. Lazorchak, W. Kinney, A.R. Selle, and R. Hjort. 1991. EMAP - surface waters monitoring and research strategy, fiscal year 1991. EPA-600-3-91-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development, Washington, D.C. and Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Oregon.
Peterman. 1990.
Peters. 1986.
Picotte, A. 1997. 1996 Lake Champlain Lay Monitoring Report. Vermont Department of Environmental Conservation. Waterbury, VT. 85 pp.
Pielou, E. C. 1977. Mathematical ecology. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York, New York.
Pielou. 1979.
Prairie, Y.T. and J. Kalff. 1986. Effect of catchment size on phosphorus export. Water Resource Bulletin 22(3):465-470.

Prairie, Y.T. 1988.
Prairie et al. 1989.
Prairie, Y.T. and Marshall. 1995.
Pridemore .... (II-2)
Pridemore. 1985.
Quiros. 1990.
Raschke. 1994.
Rast, W. and Lee, G.F. 1978. Summary Analysis of the North American Project (US portion) OECD Eutrophication Project: Nutrient Loading-Lake Response Relationships and Trophic State Indices, USEPA Corvallis Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, OR, EPA-600/3-78-008.
Rast and Lee. 1987.
Rast, W. et al. 1983.
Rawson. 1995.
Rawson, D. S. 1952. Mean depth and the fish production of large lakes. Ecology 33:513-521.
Reckhow, K.H., and J.T. Simpson. 1980. A procedure using modeling and error analysis for the prediction of the lake phosphorus concentration from land use information. Can. J. Fish Aquat. Sci. 37:1439-1448.
Reckhow, K.H. 1990. EUTROMOD - Watershed and lake modeling software. NALMS software package one. Madison WI.
Reckhow, K.H and Chapra, S.C., “Error Analysis for a Phosphorus Retention Model.” Water Resour. Res., 15:1643-1646, 1979.
Reckhow, K.H. 1977. Phosphorus Models for Lake Management. PhD Dissertation, Harvard University, Cambridge, MA.
Reckhow, K.H. 1979. “Empirical Lake Models for Phosphorus Development: Applications, Limitations, and Uncertainty.” in Perspectives on Lake Ecosystem Modeling, D. Scavia and A. Robertson, eds., Ann Arbor Science, Ann Arbor, MII, pp. 183-222.
Reckhow, K.H. .... (IV-8)
Reynolds and Walsby. 1975.
Riley, G.A. (1946) "Factors controlling phytoplankton population on Georges Bank," J. Mar. Res. 6:104- 113.
Riley and Prepas. 1985.
Rodhe, W. 1969. Crystallization of eutrophication concepts in northern Europe. Pages 50-64. [In]: Eutrophication: Causes, Consequences, Correctives. Nat. Acad. Sci.
Rohm, C. M., J. M. Omernik, and C. W. Kilsgaard. 1995, Regional patterns of total phosporous in lakes of the Northeastern United States. Lake and Reservoir Management 11:1-14.
Ryder, R. A., S. R. Kerr, K. H. Loftus, and H. A. Regier. 1974. The morphoedaphic index as a fish yield estimator: review and evaluation. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 31:663-688.
Sakamoto. 1966.
Sawyer. 1947.
Schindler, D. W. 1978. Factors regulating phytoplankton production and standing crop in the world’s freshwaters. Limnology and Oceanography 23:478-486.
Schindler. 1977.
Schuler, D. 1992. Lake Shaokatan Diagnostic-Feasibility Study. Schuler Consulting and Yellow Medicine River Watershed District. Clean Water Partnership Program, Minnesota Pollution Control Agency, St. Paul MN.

Schuler, D. 1995. Lake Shaokatan restoration project. Land and Water. May/June: 12-15.
Shafer. 19...... (V-8)
Shannon, E. E. and P. L. Brezonik. 1972. Limnological characteristics of north and central Florida lakes. Limnology and Oceanography 17:97-110.
Shapiro et al. 197.....(II-6)
Shapiro, J., V. Lamarra and M. Lynch.1975Biomanipulation -- an ecosystem approach to lake restoration. Proceedings of a symposium on Water Quality Management through biological control. Univ. of Florida.
Scheffer, M. 1989. Alternative stable states in eutrophic shallow freshwater systems: a minimal model. Hydrobiol. Bull. 23: 73-85.
Scheffer, M., S.H. Hosper, M-L. Meijer, B. Moss and E. Jeppesen (1993). Alternative equilibria in shallow lakes. Trend Ecol. Evolut. 8: 275-279.
Smart et al. 1980.
Smeltzer, E. and S.A. Heiskary. 1990. Analysis and applications of lake user survey data. Lake and Reserv. Manage. 6:109-118.
Smeltzer et al. 1989.
Smeltzer, E. and S. Quinn. 1996. A phosphorus budget, model, and load reduction strategy for Lake Champlain. Lake and Reserv. Manage.12:381-393.
Smith. 1982.
Smith, D.G. A.M. Cragg and G.F. Croker. 1991. Water clarity criteria for bathing waters based on ser perception. J. Environ. Manag. 33: 285-299.
Smol, J. P.. 1992. Paleolimnology: an important tool for effective ecosystem management. J. Aq. Ecosystem Health 1:49-58.
Steele, J.H., (1962) "Environmental control of photosynthesis in the sea," Limnol. Oceanogr. 7:137-150.
STORET. 1998. User Guide and Reference Manual Version 1.1. SDC-0055-074-EB-8014. U.S. EPA, Office of Water.
Ter Braak, C. J. F.. 1988. CANOCO - A FORTAN program for canonical community ordination. Agricultural Mathematics Group, Wageningen, The Netherlands.
terBraak, C. J. F., and S. Juggins. 1993. Weighted averaging partial least squares regression (WA-PLS): An improved method for reconstructing environmental variables from species assemblages. Hydrobiologia 269/270:485-502.
Thienemann, A. 1921. Seetypen. Naturwissenschaften. 18: 1-3.
Thomann. 1976.
Thompson, S. K. 1992. Sampling. John Wiley and Sons, New York, NY.
Thornton, K. W. 1990. Sedimentary process. Pages 43-69 In K. W. Thornton. B. L. Kimmel and F. E. Payne, eds. Reservoir limnology: Ecological perspectives. John Wiley and Sons Inc., New York, NY.
USEPA. 1994. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program: Integrated quality assurance project plan for the Surface Waters Resource Group, 1994 activities, Rev. 2.00. EPA 600/X-91/080. U. S. Environmental Protection Agency, Las Vegas, NV.
USEPA. 1974.
USEPA. 1974. An approach to a relative trophic index system for classifying lakes and reservoirs. Working Paper No. 24. National Eutrophication Survey, Corvallis, OR.
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1975. A compendium of lake and reservoir data collected by the National Eutrophication Survey in the northeast and nor-central United States. National Eutrophication Survey. Working Paper No. 474.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1978a. A compendium of lake and reservoir data collected by the National Eutrophication Survey in eastern north-central, and southeastern United States. National Eutrophication Survey. Working Paper No. 475.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1978b. A compendium of lake and reservoir data collected by the National Eutrophication Survey in the central United States. National Eutrophication Survey. Working Paper No. 476.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 1978c. A compendium of lake and reservoir data collected by the National Eutrophication Survey in the western United States. National Eutrophication Survey. Working Paper No. 477.

USEPA. 1996. National Nutrient Assessment Workshop Proceedings. USEPA Office of Water. EPA-822-96-004.

Vermont Department of Environmental Conservation and New York State Department of Environmental Conservation. 1997. A phosphorus budget, model, and load reduction strategy for Lake Champlain. Lake Champlain diagnostic-feasibility study final report. Waterbury, VT and Albany, NY. 129 pp.

Vermont Water Resources Board. 1996. Vermont Water Quality Standards. Montpelier, VT. 45 pp.

Verry and Timmons. 1982.

Vighi and Chiaudani. 1985. A simple method to estimate lake phosphorus concentrations resulting from natural background loading. Wat. Res. 19: 987-991.

Vollenweider, R.A. 1968. “The Scientific Basis of Lake and Stream Eutrophication with Particular Reference to Phosphorus and Nitrogen as Eutrophication Factors.” Technical Report DAS/DSl/ 68.27, Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development, Paris, France.

Vollenweider, R.A. 1969. M_glichkeiten..............

Vollenweider, R.A. 1969. Possibilities and limits of elementary models concerning the budget of substances in lakes. (In German) Hydrobiol. 66:1-36.

Vollenweider, R.A.1971. Scientific fundamentals of the eutrophication of lakes and flowing waters, with particular reference to nitrogen and phosphorous as factors in eutrophication. OECD.

Vollenweider, R. A. 1974.

Vollenweider, R.A. 1975. “Input-Output Models with Special Reference to the Phosphorus Loading Concept in Limnology.” Schweiz. Z. Hydrol. 37:53-84.

Vollenweider, R.A. 1976. “Advances in Defining Critical Loading Levels for Phosphorus in Lake Eutrophication.” Mem. Ist. Ital. Idrobiol. 33:53-83.

Vollenweider, R.A. and Kerekes. 1980.

Walker, W.W., Jr. 1977. “Some Analytical Methods Applied to Lake Water Quality Problems.” PhD Dissertation, Harvard University, Cambridge, MA.

Walker, W.W., Jr. 1979. Use of hypolimnetic depletion rate as a trophic status index for lakes. Wat. Resour. Res. 15:1463-1470.

Walker, W.W. 1985a. Statistical bases for mean chlorophyll a criteria. pp. 57-62 In Lake and Reservoir Management: Practical Applications. Proceedings of the Fourth Annual Conference and International Symposium. October 16-19, 1984. McAfee, NJ. North American Lake Management Society.

Walker, W.W., Jr. 1985b. Urban nonpoint source impacts on surface water supply. Pages 129-137. Perspectives on Nonpoint Source Pollution. Proceedings of a national conference. Kansas City, Missouri, May 19-22, 1985. U.S. EPA 440/5-85-01.

Walker, W.W. 1987.

Walker, W.W. 1995.

Watson et al. 1992.

Wedepohl et al. 1990.
Welch, E. B. and G. D. Cooke. 1995. Internal phosphorus loading in shallow lakes: importance and control. Lake and Reservoir Management 11:273-281.
Wetzel. 195.... ((II-4)
Wetzel, R. G. (editor). 1975. Limnology. W. B. Saunders Company, New York, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.
Wilson, C.B. 1989. Lake water quality modeling used in Minnesota. Pages 33-44 in National Conference on Enhancing State Lake Management Program. May 12-13. 1988. Chicago, Illinois.
Wilson. 1990.
Wilson, C.B. and W.W. Walker 1989. Development of lake assessment methods based upon the aquatic ecoregion concept. Lake and Reserv. Manage. 5(2):11-22.
Wright, H. E., Jr. 1967. A square-rod piston sampler for lake sediments. Journal of Sedimentary Petrology 37:975-976.
Wuhrmann, K. 1974. Some problems and perspectives in applied limnology. Mitt. Internat. Veriein. Limnol. 29: 324-402.
Wurtsbaugh et al. ....(III-7)
WLMS. .... (VIII-15)